

**PCT**WORLD INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY ORGANIZATION  
International Bureau

## INTERNATIONAL APPLICATION PUBLISHED UNDER THE PATENT COOPERATION TREATY (PCT)

<b>(51) International Patent Classification <sup>7</sup> :</b> <b>C07K 5/06, 14/705</b>	<b>A1</b>	<b>(11) International Publication Number:</b> <b>WO 00/43415</b> <b>(43) International Publication Date:</b> 27 July 2000 (27.07.00)
<b>(21) International Application Number:</b> PCT/US00/01603 <b>(22) International Filing Date:</b> 21 January 2000 (21.01.00) <b>(30) Priority Data:</b> 09/237,473 25 January 1999 (25.01.99) US <b>(63) Related by Continuation (CON) or Continuation-in-Part (CIP) to Earlier Application</b> US 09/237,473 (CON) Filed on 25 January 1999 (25.01.99) <b>(71) Applicants (for all designated States except US):</b> ELAN PHARMACEUTICALS, INC. [US/US]; 800 Gateway Boulevard, South San Francisco, CA 94080 (US). AMERICAN HOME PRODUCTS CORPORATION [US/US]; 5 Giraldi Farms, Madison, NJ 07940 (US). <b>(72) Inventors; and</b> <b>(75) Inventors/Applicants (for US only):</b> ASHWELL, Susan [US/US]; 1015 Aspen Drive, Plainsboro, NJ 08536 (US). BAUDY, Reinhardt, Bernhard [DE/US]; 5281 Harrington Court, Doylestown, PA 18901 (US). PLEISS, Michael, A. [US/US]; 848 Stella Court, Sunnyvale, CA 94086 (US). SARANTAKIS, Dimitrios [US/US]; 262 Sentinel Avenue,	<b>(74) Agents:</b> BOLEY, Leslie, J. et al.; Burns, Doane, Swecker & Mathis, LLP, P.O. Box 1404, Alexandria, VA 22313-1404 (US). <b>(81) Designated States:</b> AE, AL, AM, AT, AU, AZ, BA, BB, BG, BR, BY, CA, CH, CN, CR, CU, CZ, DE, DK, DM, EE, ES, FI, GB, GD, GE, GH, GM, HR, HU, ID, IL, IN, IS, JP, KE, KG, KP, KR, KZ, LC, LK, LR, LS, LT, LU, LV, MA, MD, MG, MK, MN, MW, MX, NO, NZ, PL, PT, RO, RU, SD, SE, SG, SI, SK, SL, TJ, TM, TR, TT, TZ, UA, UG, US, UZ, VN, YU, ZA, ZW, ARIPO patent (GH, GM, KE, LS, MW, SD, SL, SZ, TZ, UG, ZW), Eurasian patent (AM, AZ, BY, KG, KZ, MD, RU, TJ, TM), European patent (AT, BE, CH, CY, DE, DK, ES, FI, FR, GB, GR, IE, IT, LU, MC, NL, PT, SE), OAPI patent (BF, BJ, CF, CG, CI, CM, GA, GN, GW, ML, MR, NE, SN, TD, TG). <b>Published</b> <i>With international search report.</i> <i>Before the expiration of the time limit for amending the claims and to be republished in the event of the receipt of amendments.</i>	
<b>(54) Title:</b> COMPOUNDS WHICH INHIBIT LEUKOCYTE ADHESION MEDIATED BY VLA-4 <b>(57) Abstract</b> <p>Disclosed are compounds which bind VLA-4. Certain of these compounds also inhibit leukocyte adhesion and, in particular, leukocyte adhesion mediated by VLA-4. Such compounds are useful in the treatment of inflammatory diseases in a mammalian patient, e.g., human, such as asthma, Alzheimer's disease, atherosclerosis, AIDS dementia, diabetes, inflammatory bowel disease, rheumatoid arthritis, tissue transplantation, tumor metastasis and myocardial ischemia. The compounds can also be administered for the treatment of inflammatory brain diseases such as multiple sclerosis.</p>		

**FOR THE PURPOSES OF INFORMATION ONLY**

Codes used to identify States party to the PCT on the front pages of pamphlets publishing international applications under the PCT.

AL	Albania	ES	Spain	LS	Lesotho	SI	Slovenia
AM	Armenia	FI	Finland	LT	Lithuania	SK	Slovakia
AT	Austria	FR	France	LU	Luxembourg	SN	Senegal
AU	Australia	GA	Gabon	LV	Latvia	SZ	Swaziland
AZ	Azerbaijan	GB	United Kingdom	MC	Monaco	TD	Chad
BA	Bosnia and Herzegovina	GR	Georgia	MD	Republic of Moldova	TG	Togo
BB	Barbados	GH	Ghana	MG	Madagascar	TJ	Tajikistan
BE	Belgium	GN	Guinea	MK	The former Yugoslav Republic of Macedonia	TM	Turkmenistan
BF	Burkina Faso	GR	Greece	ML	Mali	TR	Turkey
BG	Bulgaria	HU	Hungary	MN	Mongolia	TT	Trinidad and Tobago
BJ	Benin	IE	Ireland	MR	Mauritania	UA	Ukraine
BR	Brazil	IL	Israel	MW	Malawi	UG	Uganda
BY	Belarus	IS	Iceland	MX	Mexico	US	United States of America
CA	Canada	IT	Italy	NE	Niger	UZ	Uzbekistan
CF	Central African Republic	JP	Japan	NL	Netherlands	VN	Viet Nam
CG	Congo	KE	Kenya	NO	Norway	YU	Yugoslavia
CH	Switzerland	KG	Kyrgyzstan	NZ	New Zealand	ZW	Zimbabwe
CI	Côte d'Ivoire	KP	Democratic People's Republic of Korea	PL	Poland		
CM	Cameroon	KR	Republic of Korea	PT	Portugal		
CN	China	KZ	Kazakhstan	RO	Romania		
CU	Cuba	LC	Saint Lucia	RU	Russian Federation		
CZ	Czech Republic	LJ	Liechtenstein	SD	Sudan		
DE	Germany	LK	Sri Lanka	SE	Sweden		
DK	Denmark	LR	Liberia	SG	Singapore		
EE	Estonia						

**Description**

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

COMPOUNDS WHICH INHIBIT LEUKOCYTE ADHESION  
MEDIATED BY VLA-4

BACKGROUND OF THE INVENTION

Field of the Invention

This invention relates to compounds which inhibit leukocyte adhesion and, in particular, leukocyte adhesion mediated by VLA-4.

References

The following publications, patents and patent applications are cited in this application as superscript numbers:

- <sup>1</sup> Hemler and Takada, *European Patent Application Publication No. 330,506*, published August 30, 1989
- <sup>2</sup> Elices, et al., *Cell*, 60:577-584 (1990)
- <sup>3</sup> Springer, *Nature*, 346:425-434 (1990)
- <sup>4</sup> Osborn, *Cell*, 62:3-6 (1990)
- <sup>5</sup> Vedder, et al., *Surgery*, 106:509 (1989)
- <sup>6</sup> Pretolani, et al., *J. Exp. Med.*, 180:795 (1994)
- <sup>7</sup> Abraham, et al., *J. Clin. Invest.*, 93:776 (1994)
- <sup>8</sup> Mulligan, et al., *J. Immunology*, 150:2407 (1993)
- <sup>9</sup> Cybulsky, et al., *Science*, 251:788 (1991)
- <sup>10</sup> Li, et al., *Arterioscler. Thromb.*, 13:197 (1993)

- 11 Sasseville, et al., *Am. J. Path.*, 144:27 (1994)
- 12 Yang, et al., *Proc. Nat. Acad. Science (USA)*, 90:10494 (1993)
- 13 Burkly, et al., *Diabetes*, 43:529 (1994)
- 14 Baron, et al., *J. Clin. Invest.*, 93:1700 (1994)
- 15 Hamann, et al., *J. Immunology*, 152:3238 (1994)
- 16 Yednock, et al., *Nature*, 356:63 (1992)
- 17 Baron, et al., *J. Exp. Med.*, 177:57 (1993)
- 18 van Dinther-Janssen, et al., *J. Immunology*, 147:4207 (1991)
- 19 van Dinther-Janssen, et al., *Annals. Rheumatic Dis.*, 52:672 (1993)
- 20 Elices, et al., *J. Clin. Invest.*, 93:405 (1994)
- 21 Postigo, et al., *J. Clin. Invest.*, 89:1445 (1991)
- 22 Paul, et al., *Transpl. Proceed.*, 25:813 (1993)
- 23 Okarhara, et al., *Can. Res.*, 54:3233 (1994)
- 24 Paavonen, et al., *Int. J. Can.*, 58:298 (1994)
- 25 Schadendorf, et al., *J. Path.*, 170:429 (1993)
- 26 Bao, et al., *Diff.*, 52:239 (1993)
- 27 Lauri, et al., *British J. Cancer*, 68:862 (1993)
- 28 Kawaguchi, et al., *Japanese J. Cancer Res.*, 83:1304 (1992)
- 29 Kogan, et al., *U.S. Patent No. 5,510,332*, issued April 23, 1996
- 30 International Patent Appl. Publication No. WO 96/01644

All of the above publications, patents and patent applications are herein incorporated by reference in their entirety to the same extent as if each individual publication, patent or patent application was specifically and individually indicated to be incorporated by reference in its entirety.

#### State of the Art

VLA-4 (also referred to as  $\alpha_4\beta_1$  integrin and CD49d/CD29), first identified by Hemler and Takada<sup>1</sup> is a member of the  $\beta_1$  integrin family of cell surface receptors, each of which comprises two subunits, an  $\alpha$  chain and a  $\beta$  chain. VLA-4 contains an  $\alpha_4$  chain and a  $\beta_1$  chain. There are at least nine  $\beta_1$  integrins, all sharing the same  $\beta_1$  chain and each having a distinct  $\alpha$  chain. These nine receptors all bind a different complement of the various cell matrix molecules, such as fibronectin, laminin, and collagen. VLA-4, for example, binds to fibronectin. VLA-4 also binds non-matrix molecules that are expressed by endothelial and other cells. These non-matrix molecules include VCAM-1, which is expressed on cytokine-activated human umbilical vein endothelial cells in culture. Distinct epitopes of VLA-4 are responsible for the fibronectin and VCAM-1 binding activities and each activity has been shown to be inhibited independently.<sup>2</sup>

Intercellular adhesion mediated by VLA-4 and other cell surface receptors is associated with a number of inflammatory responses. At the site of an injury or other inflammatory stimulus, activated vascular endothelial cells express molecules that are adhesive for leukocytes. The mechanics of leukocyte adhesion to endothelial cells involves, in part, the recognition and binding of cell surface receptors on leukocytes to the corresponding cell surface molecules on endothelial cells. Once bound, the leukocytes migrate across the blood vessel wall to enter the injured site and release chemical mediators to combat infection. For reviews of adhesion receptors of the immune system, see, for example, Springer<sup>3</sup> and Osborn<sup>4</sup>.

Inflammatory brain disorders, such as experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis (EAE), multiple sclerosis (MS) and meningitis, are examples of central nervous system disorders in which the endothelium/leukocyte adhesion mechanism results in destruction to otherwise healthy brain tissue. Large numbers of leukocytes migrate across the blood brain barrier (BBB) in subjects with these inflammatory diseases. The leukocytes release toxic mediators that cause extensive tissue damage resulting in impaired nerve conduction and paralysis.

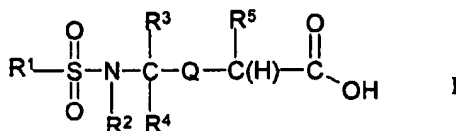
In other organ systems, tissue damage also occurs via an adhesion mechanism resulting in migration or activation of leukocytes. For example, it has been shown that the initial insult following myocardial ischemia to heart tissue can be further complicated by leukocyte entry to the injured tissue causing still further insult (Vedder et al.<sup>5</sup>). Other inflammatory conditions mediated by an adhesion mechanism include, by way of example, asthma<sup>6-8</sup>, Alzheimer's disease, atherosclerosis<sup>9-10</sup>, AIDS dementia<sup>11</sup>, diabetes<sup>12-14</sup> (including acute juvenile onset diabetes), inflammatory bowel disease<sup>15</sup> (including ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease), multiple sclerosis<sup>16-17</sup>, rheumatoid arthritis<sup>18-21</sup>, tissue transplantation<sup>22</sup>, tumor metastasis<sup>23-28</sup>, meningitis, encephalitis, stroke, and other cerebral traumas, nephritis, retinitis, atopic dermatitis, psoriasis, myocardial ischemia and acute leukocyte-mediated lung injury such as that which occurs in adult respiratory distress syndrome.

In view of the above, assays for determining the VLA-4 level in a biological sample containing VLA-4 would be useful, for example, to diagnosis VLA-4 mediated conditions. Additionally, despite these advances in the understanding of leukocyte adhesion, the art has only recently addressed the use of inhibitors of adhesion in the treatment of inflammatory

brain diseases and other inflammatory conditions<sup>29,30</sup>. The present invention addresses these and other needs.

### SUMMARY OF THE INVENTION

This invention provides compounds which bind to VLA-4. Such compounds can be used, for example, to assay for the presence of VLA-4 in a sample and in pharmaceutical compositions to inhibit cellular adhesion mediated by VLA-4, for example, binding of VCAM-1 to VLA-4. The compounds of this invention have a binding affinity to VLA-4 as expressed by an IC<sub>50</sub> of about 15  $\mu$ M or less (measured as described in Example A below) which compounds are defined by formula I below:



wherein

R<sup>1</sup> is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, substituted cycloalkenyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic and substituted heterocyclic,;

R<sup>2</sup> is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, substituted cycloalkenyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, and R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> together with the nitrogen atom bound to R<sup>2</sup> and the SO<sub>2</sub> group can form a heterocyclic or a substituted heterocyclic group;

R<sup>3</sup> is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, substituted



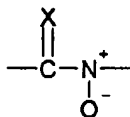
cycloalkenyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, and, when R<sup>2</sup> does not form a heterocyclic group with R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> together with the nitrogen atom bound to R<sup>2</sup> and the carbon atom bound to R<sup>3</sup> can form a heterocyclic group or a substituted heterocyclic group;

R<sup>4</sup> is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, substituted cycloalkenyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, and, when R<sup>3</sup> does not form a heterocyclic or a substituted heterocyclic group with R<sup>2</sup>, then R<sup>3</sup> and R<sup>4</sup> together with the carbon atom to which they are attached can form a cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclic or substituted heterocyclic group;

R<sup>5</sup> is selected from the group consisting of isopropyl, -CH<sub>2</sub>-W and =CH-W, where W is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, alkoxy, substituted alkoxy, aryl, substituted aryl, aryloxy, substituted aryloxy, aryloxyaryl, substituted aryloxyaryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, acylamino, carboxyl, carboxylalkyl, carboxyl-substituted alkyl, carboxyl-cycloalkyl, carboxyl-substituted cycloalkyl, carboxylaryl, carboxyl-substituted aryl, carboxylheteroaryl, carboxyl-substituted heteroaryl, carboxyheterocyclic, carboxy-substituted heterocyclic, and hydroxyl with the proviso that when R<sup>5</sup> is =CH-W then (H) is removed from the formula and W is not hydroxyl;

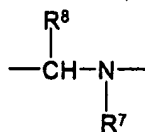
Q is selected from the group consisting of:

(i)



wherein X is selected from the group consisting of oxygen, sulfur and NH;

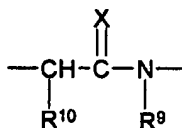
(ii)



wherein R<sup>7</sup> is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl and substituted alkyl;

R<sup>8</sup> is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl and substituted alkyl; or R<sup>7</sup> and R<sup>8</sup> together with the nitrogen atom bound to R<sup>7</sup> and the carbon bound to R<sup>8</sup> can form a heterocyclic or substituted heterocyclic ring;

(iii)

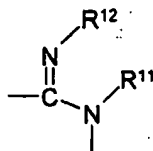


wherein R<sup>9</sup> is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl and substituted alkyl;

R<sup>10</sup> is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl and substituted alkyl; or R<sup>9</sup> and R<sup>10</sup> together with the nitrogen atom bound to R<sup>9</sup>, the carbon atom bound to R<sup>10</sup> and the -C(X)- group can form a heterocyclic or substituted heterocyclic group;

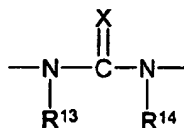
X is selected from the group consisting of oxygen, sulfur and NH;

(iv)



wherein R<sup>11</sup> and R<sup>12</sup> together with the nitrogen atom bound to R<sup>11</sup> and the >C=N- group bound to R<sup>12</sup> form a heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, heteroaryl, or substituted heteroaryl ring; and

(v)

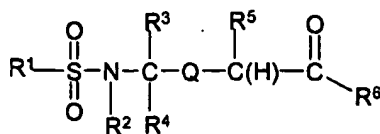


wherein R<sup>13</sup> is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and substituted alkyl;

R<sup>14</sup> is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and substituted alkyl;

X is selected from the group consisting of oxygen, sulfur and NH; and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

In another embodiment, the compounds of this invention can also be provided as prodrugs which convert (e.g., hydrolyze, metabolize, etc.) *in vivo* to a compound of formula I above. In a preferred example of such an embodiment, the carboxylic acid in the compound of formula I is modified into a group which, *in vivo*, will convert to the carboxylic acid (including salts thereof). In a particularly preferred embodiment, such prodrugs are represented by compounds of formula IA:



IA

wherein

R<sup>1</sup> is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, substituted cycloalkenyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic and substituted heterocyclic,;

R<sup>2</sup> is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, substituted cycloalkenyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, and R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> together with the nitrogen atom bound to R<sup>2</sup> and the SO<sub>2</sub> group can form a heterocyclic or a substituted heterocyclic group;

R<sup>3</sup> is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, substituted cycloalkenyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, and, when R<sup>2</sup> does not form a heterocyclic group with R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> together with the nitrogen atom bound to R<sup>2</sup> and the carbon atom bound to R<sup>3</sup> can form a heterocyclic group or a substituted heterocyclic group;

R<sup>4</sup> is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, substituted cycloalkenyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, and, when R<sup>3</sup> does not form a heterocyclic or a substituted heterocyclic group with R<sup>2</sup>, then R<sup>3</sup> and R<sup>4</sup> together with the carbon atom to which they are attached can form a

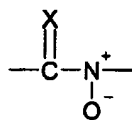
cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclic or substituted heterocyclic group;

$R^5$  is selected from the group consisting of isopropyl,  $-CH_2-W$  and  $=CH-W$ , where  $W$  is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, alkoxy, substituted alkoxy, aryl, substituted aryl, aryloxy, substituted aryloxy, aryloxyaryl, substituted aryloxyaryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, acylamino, carboxyl, carboxylalkyl, carboxyl-substituted alkyl, carboxyl-cycloalkyl, carboxyl-substituted cycloalkyl, carboxylaryl, carboxyl-substituted aryl, carboxylheteroaryl, carboxyl-substituted heteroaryl, carboxyheterocyclic, carboxy-substituted heterocyclic, and hydroxyl with the proviso that when  $R^5$  is  $=CH-W$  then (H) is removed from the formula and  $W$  is not hydroxyl;

$R^6$  is selected from the group consisting of amino, alkoxy, substituted alkoxy, cycloalkoxy, substituted cycloalkoxy, aryloxy, substituted aryloxy, heteroaryloxy, substituted heteroaryloxy, heterocyclyloxy, substituted heterocyclyloxy,  $-NHOY$  where  $Y$  is hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, or substituted aryl, and  $-NH(CH_2)_pCOOY'$  where  $Y'$  is hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, or substituted aryl, and  $p$  is an integer of from 1 to 8;

$Q$  is selected from the group consisting of:

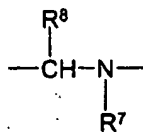
(i)



wherein  $X$  is selected from the group consisting of oxygen, sulfur and NH;

- 11 -

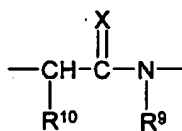
(ii)



wherein R<sup>7</sup> is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl and substituted alkyl;

R<sup>8</sup> is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl and substituted alkyl; or R<sup>7</sup> and R<sup>8</sup> together with the nitrogen atom bound to R<sup>7</sup> and the carbon bound to R<sup>8</sup> can form a heterocyclic or substituted heterocyclic ring;

(iii)



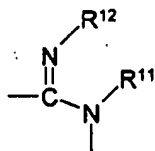
wherein R<sup>9</sup> is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl and substituted alkyl;

R<sup>10</sup> is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl and substituted alkyl; or R<sup>9</sup> and R<sup>10</sup> together with the nitrogen atom bound to R<sup>9</sup>, the carbon atom bound to R<sup>10</sup> and the -C(X)- group can form a heterocyclic or substituted heterocyclic group;

X is selected from the group consisting of oxygen, sulfur and NH;  
and

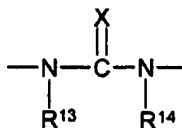
- 12 -

(iv)



wherein  $R^{11}$  and  $R^{12}$  together with the nitrogen atom bound to  $R^{11}$  and the  $>C=N$ - group bound to  $R^{12}$  form a heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, heteroaryl, or substituted heteroaryl ring; and

(v)



wherein  $R^{13}$  is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and substituted alkyl;

$R^{14}$  is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and substituted alkyl;

$X$  is selected from the group consisting of oxygen, sulfur and  $NH$ ; and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

Preferably, in the compounds of formula I and IA above,  $R^1$  is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, heteroaryl and substituted heteroaryl. Even more preferably  $R^1$  is selected from the group consisting of methyl, isopropyl, *n*-butyl, benzyl, phenethyl, phenyl, 4-methylphenyl, 4-*t*-butylphenyl, 2,4,6-trimethylphenyl, 2-fluorophenyl, 3-fluorophenyl, 4-fluorophenyl, 2,4-difluorophenyl, 3,4-difluorophenyl, 3,5-difluorophenyl, 2-chlorophenyl, 3-chlorophenyl, 4-chlorophenyl, 3,4-dichlorophenyl, 3,5-dichlorophenyl, 3-chloro-4-fluorophenyl, 4-

bromophenyl, 2-methoxyphenyl, 3-methoxyphenyl, 4-methoxyphenyl, 3,4-dimethoxyphenyl, 4-*t*-butoxyphenyl, 4-(3'-dimethylamino-*n*-propoxy)-phenyl, 2-carboxyphenyl, 2-(methoxycarbonyl)phenyl, 4-(H<sub>2</sub>NC(O)-)phenyl, 4-(H<sub>2</sub>NC(S)-)phenyl, 4-cyanophenyl, 4-trifluoromethylphenyl, 4-trifluoromethoxyphenyl, 3,5-di-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl, 4-nitrophenyl, 4-aminophenyl, 4-(CH<sub>3</sub>C(O)NH-)phenyl, 4-(PhNHC(O)NH-)phenyl, 4-amidinophenyl, 4-methylamidinophenyl, 4-(CH<sub>3</sub>SC(=NH)-)phenyl, 4-chloro-3-(H<sub>2</sub>NS(O)<sub>2</sub>-)phenyl, 1-naphthyl, 2-naphthyl, pyridin-2-yl, pyridin-3-yl, pyrimidin-2-yl, quinolin-8-yl, 2-(trifluoroacetyl)-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinolin-7-yl, morpholin-4-yl, 2-thienyl, 5-chloro-2-thienyl, 2,5-dichloro-4-thienyl, 1-N-methylimidazol-4-yl, 1-N-methylpyrazol-3-yl, 1-N-methylpyrazol-4-yl, 1-N-butylpyrazol-4-yl, 1-N-methyl-3-methyl-5-chloropyrazol-4-yl, 1-N-methyl-5-methyl-3-chloropyrazol-4-yl, 2-thiazolyl and 5-methyl-1,3,4-thiadiazol-2-yl.

Preferably, in the compounds of formula I and IA above, R<sup>2</sup> is hydrogen, methyl, phenyl, benzyl, -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>-2-thienyl, and -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>-φ.

In one embodiment, R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> together with the nitrogen atom bound to R<sup>2</sup> and the SO<sub>2</sub> group bound to R<sup>1</sup> are joined to form a heterocyclic group or substituted heterocyclic group. Preferred heterocyclic and substituted heterocyclic groups include those having from 5 to 7 ring atoms having 2 to 3 heteroatoms in the ring selected from the group consisting of nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur which ring is optionally fused to another ring such as a phenyl or cyclohexyl ring to provide for a fused ring heterocycle of from 10 to 14 ring atoms having 2 to 4 heteroatoms in the ring selected from the group consisting of nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur. Specifically preferred R<sup>1</sup>/R<sup>2</sup> joined groups include, by way of example, benzisothiazolonyl (saccharin-2-yl), N-2,10-camphorsultamyl and 1,1-dioxo-2,3-dihydro-3,3-dimethyl-1,2-benzisothiazol-2-yl.



In one preferred embodiment, R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> together with the nitrogen atom bound to R<sup>2</sup> substituent and the carbon bound to the R<sup>3</sup> substituent form a heterocyclic group or a substituted heterocyclic group of 4 to 6 ring atoms having 1 to 2 heteroatoms in the ring selected from the group consisting of nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur which ring is optionally substituted with 1 to 2 substituents selected from the group consisting of fluoro, methyl, hydroxy, oxo (=O), amino, phenyl, thiophenyl, thiobenzyl, (thiomorpholin-4-yl)C(O)O-, CH<sub>3</sub>S(O)<sub>2</sub>- and CH<sub>3</sub>S(O)<sub>2</sub>O-, or can be fused to another ring such as a phenyl or cycloalkyl ring to provide for a fused ring heterocycle of from 10 to 14 ring atoms having 1 to 2 heteroatoms in the ring selected from the group consisting of nitrogen, oxygen and sulfur. Such heterocyclic rings include azetidiny (e.g., L-azetidiny), thiazolidiny (e.g., L-thiazolidiny), piperidiny (e.g., L-piperidiny), piperaziny (e.g., L-piperaziny), dihydroindolyl (e.g., L-2,3-dihydroindol-2-yl), tetrahydroquinoliny (e.g., L-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroquinol-2-yl), thiomorpholinyl (e.g., L-thiomorpholin-3-yl), pyrrolidiny (e.g., L-pyrrolidiny), substituted pyrrolidiny such as 4-hydroxypyrrolidiny (e.g., 4- $\alpha$ -(or  $\beta$ )-hydroxy-L-pyrrolidiny), 4-oxopyrrolidiny (e.g., 4-oxo-L-pyrrolidiny), 4-fluoropyrrolidiny (e.g., 4- $\alpha$ -(or  $\beta$ )-fluoro-L-pyrrolidiny), 4,4-difluoropyrrolidiny (e.g., 4,4-difluoro-L-pyrrolidiny), 4-(thiomorpholin-4-yl)C(O)O-pyrrolidiny (e.g., 4- $\alpha$ -(or  $\beta$ )-(thiomorpholin-4-yl)C(O)O-L-pyrrolidiny, 4-(CH<sub>3</sub>S(O)<sub>2</sub>O-)pyrrolidiny (e.g., 4- $\alpha$ -(or  $\beta$ )-(CH<sub>3</sub>S(O)<sub>2</sub>O-)L-pyrrolidiny, 3-phenylpyrrolidiny (e.g., 3- $\alpha$ -(or  $\beta$ )-phenyl-L-pyrrolidiny), 3-thiophenylpyrrolidiny (e.g., 3- $\alpha$ -(or  $\beta$ )-thiophenyl-L-pyrrolidiny), 4-aminopyrrolidiny (e.g., 4- $\alpha$ -(or  $\beta$ )-amino-L-pyrrolidiny), 3-methoxypyrrolidiny (e.g., 3- $\alpha$ -(or  $\beta$ )-methoxy-L-pyrrolidiny), 4,4-dimethylpyrrolidiny, substituted piperaziny such as 4-N-Cbz-piperaziny and 4-(CH<sub>3</sub>S(O)<sub>2</sub>-)piperaziny, substituted thiazolidiny such as 5,5-dimethylthiazolidin-4-yl, 1,1-dioxo-thiazolidiny (e.g., L-1,1-dioxo-thiazolidin-2-yl), substituted 1,1-dioxo-thiazolidiny such as L-1,1-dioxo-5,5-

dimethylthiazolidin-2-yl, 1,1-dioxothiomorpholinyl (e.g., L-1,1-dioxo-  
thiomorpholin-3-yl) and the like.

Preferably, in the compounds of formula I and IA above, R<sup>3</sup> includes  
all of the isomers arising by substitution with hydrogen, methyl, phenyl,  
benzyl, diphenylmethyl, -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-COOH, -CH<sub>2</sub>-COOH, 2-amidoethyl, *iso*-  
butyl, *t*-butyl, -CH<sub>2</sub>O-benzyl and hydroxymethyl. Additionally, in another  
preferred embodiment, R<sup>3</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> together with the nitrogen atom bound to  
R<sup>2</sup> can form a heterocyclic group or substituted heterocyclic group.

Preferably, in the compounds of formula I and IA above, R<sup>4</sup> is  
selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, methyl, ethyl, phenyl and  
where R<sup>3</sup> and R<sup>4</sup> are joined together with the carbon atom to which they are  
attached to form a cycloalkyl group of from 3 to 6 carbon atoms or a  
heterocyclic group of from 3 to 8 ring atoms. Preferred cycloalkyl alkyl  
groups include cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl and cyclohexyl.

Q is preferably -C(O)N(O)-, -CH<sub>2</sub>NH-, -CH(OH)C(O)NH-,  
-NHC(O)NH-, or tetrazol-1,5-diyl.

R<sup>5</sup> is preferably selected from all possible isomers arising by  
substitution with the following groups:

4-methylbenzyl,  
4-hydroxybenzyl,  
4-methoxybenzyl,  
4-*t*-butoxybenzyl,  
4-benzoyloxybenzyl,  
4-[ $\phi$ -CH(CH<sub>3</sub>)O-]benzyl,  
4-[ $\phi$ -CH(COOH)O-]benzyl,  
4-[BocNHCH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-]benzyl,

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

5

10

15

20

25

30

4-chlorobenzyl,  
4-[NH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-carboxybenzyl,  
4-[CbzNHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>NH-]benzyl,  
3-hydroxy-4-( $\phi$ -OC(O)NH-)benzyl,  
4-[HOOCCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
benzyl,  
4-[2'-carboxylphenoxy-]benzyl,  
4-( $\phi$ -C(O)NH-)benzyl,  
3-carboxybenzyl,  
4-iodobenzyl,  
4-hydroxy-3,5-diiodobenzyl,  
4-hydroxy-3-iodobenzyl,  
4-[2'-carboxyphenyl-]benzyl,  
 $\phi$ -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
4-nitrobenzyl,  
2-carboxybenzyl,  
4-[dibenzylamino]-benzyl,  
4-[(1'-cyclopropylpiperidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)CH<sub>2</sub>NHBoc]benzyl,  
4-carboxybenzyl,  
4-hydroxy-3-nitrobenzyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)CH(CH<sub>3</sub>)NHBoc]benzyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)CH(CH<sub>2</sub> $\phi$ )NHBoc]benzyl,  
isobutyl,  
methyl,  
4-[CH<sub>3</sub>C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
-CH<sub>2</sub>-(3-indolyl),  
*n*-butyl,  
*t*-butyl-OC(O)CH<sub>2</sub>-,

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

5

10

15

20

25

30

*t*-butyl-OC(O)CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-,H<sub>2</sub>NC(O)CH<sub>2</sub>-,H<sub>2</sub>NC(O)CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-,BocNH-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,*t*-butyl-OC(O)-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>-,HOOCCH<sub>2</sub>-,HOOC(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>-,H<sub>2</sub>N(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,

isopropyl,

(1-naphthyl)-CH<sub>2</sub>-,(2-naphthyl)-CH<sub>2</sub>-,(2-thiophenyl)-CH<sub>2</sub>-,(φ-CH<sub>2</sub>-OC(O)NH-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,cyclohexyl-CH<sub>2</sub>-,benzyloxy-CH<sub>2</sub>-,HOCH<sub>2</sub>-,5-(3-N-benzyl)imidazolyl-CH<sub>2</sub>-,2-pyridyl-CH<sub>2</sub>-,3-pyridyl-CH<sub>2</sub>-,4-pyridyl-CH<sub>2</sub>-,5-(3-N-methyl)imidazolyl-CH<sub>2</sub>-,N-benzylpiperid-4-yl-CH<sub>2</sub>-,N-Boc-piperidin-4-yl-CH<sub>2</sub>-,N-(phenyl-carbonyl)piperidin-4-yl-CH<sub>2</sub>-,H<sub>3</sub>CSCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-,1-N-benzylimidazol-4-yl-CH<sub>2</sub>-,*iso*-propyl-C(O)NH-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,*iso*-butyl-C(O)NH-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,phenyl-C(O)NH-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,benzyl-C(O)NH-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

5

10

15

20

25

30

allyl-C(O)NH-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,  
 4-(3-N-methylimidazolyl)-CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
 4-imidazolyl,  
 4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-O]-benzyl,  
 4-[(benzyl)<sub>2</sub>N]-benzyl,  
 4-aminobenzyl,  
 allyloxy-C(O)NH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,  
 allyloxy-C(O)NH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>-,  
 allyloxy-C(O)NH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>-,  
 NH<sub>2</sub>C(O)CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
 φ-CH=,  
 2-pyridyl-C(O)NH-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,  
 4-methylpyrid-3-yl-C(O)NH-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,  
 3-methylthien-2-yl-C(O)NH-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,  
 2-pyrrolyl-C(O)NH-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,  
 2-furanyl-C(O)NH-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,  
 4-methylphenyl-SO<sub>2</sub>-N(CH<sub>3</sub>)CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,  
 4-[cyclopentylacetylenyl]-benzyl,  
 4-[-NHC(O)-(N-Boc)-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-benzyl-,  
 1-N-methylimidazol-4-yl-CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
 1-N-methylimidazol-5-yl-CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
 imidazol-5-yl-CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
 6-methylpyrid-3-yl-C(O)NH-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,  
 4-[2'-carboxymethylphenyl]-benzyl,  
 4-[-NHC(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-φ]-benzyl,  
 4-[-NHC(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-φ]-benzyl,  
 -CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>φ,  
 4-[φ(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>O]-benzyl,  
 4-[-C≡C-φ-4'φ]-benzyl,  
 4-[-C≡C-CH<sub>2</sub>-O-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-4'-CH<sub>3</sub>-φ]-benzyl,

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

5

10

15

20

25

30

4-[-C≡C-CH<sub>2</sub>NHC(O)NH<sub>2</sub>]-benzyl,  
 4-[-C≡C-CH<sub>2</sub>-O-4'-COOCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>-φ]-benzyl,  
 4-[-C≡C-CH(NH<sub>2</sub>)-cyclohexyl]-benzyl,  
 -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NHC(O)CH<sub>2</sub>-3-indolyl,  
 -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NHC(O)CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-3-indolyl,  
 -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NHC(O)-3-(5-methoxyindolyl),  
 -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NHC(O)-3-(1-methylindolyl),  
 -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NHC(O)-4-(-SO<sub>2</sub>(CH<sub>3</sub>)-φ),  
 -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NHC(O)-4-(C(O)CH<sub>3</sub>)-phenyl,  
 -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NHC(O)-4-fluorophenyl,  
 -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NHC(O)CH<sub>2</sub>O-4-fluorophenyl,  
 4-[-C≡C-(2-pyridyl)]benzyl,  
 4-[-C≡C-CH<sub>2</sub>-O-phenyl]benzyl,  
 4-[-C≡C-CH<sub>2</sub>OCH<sub>3</sub>]benzyl,  
 4-[-C≡C-(3-hydroxyphenyl)]benzyl,  
 4-[-C≡C-CH<sub>2</sub>-O-4'-(-C(O)OC<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>)phenyl]benzyl,  
 4-[-C≡C-CH<sub>2</sub>CH(C(O)OCH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>]benzyl,  
 4-[-C≡C-CH<sub>2</sub>NH-(4,5-dihydro-4-oxo-5-phenyl-oxazol-2-yl),  
 3-aminobenzyl,  
 4-[-C≡C-CH<sub>2</sub>CH(NHC(O)CH<sub>3</sub>)C(O)OH]-benzyl,  
 -CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NHCH(CH<sub>3</sub>)φ,  
 -CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>-(4-dimethylamino)-φ,  
 -CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>-4-nitrophenyl,  
 -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)N(CH<sub>3</sub>)CH<sub>2</sub>-φ,  
 -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-(N-methyl)-2-pyrrolyl,  
 -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>,  
 -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-3-indolyl,  
 -CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)N(CH<sub>3</sub>)CH<sub>2</sub>phenyl,  
 -CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>-(N-methyl)-2-pyrrolyl,  
 -CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>,

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

5

10

15

20

25

30

-CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-3-indolyl,  
-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>C(O)NHCH(CH<sub>3</sub>)φ,  
-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>C(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>-4-dimethylaminophenyl,  
-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>C(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>-4-nitrophenyl,  
-CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-4-[-NHC(O)CH<sub>3</sub>-phenyl],  
-CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-4-pyridyl,  
-CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-4-[dimethylaminophenyl],  
-CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-3-methoxyphenyl,  
-CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-4-chlorophenyl,  
-CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-2-pyridyl,  
-CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-4-methoxyphenyl,  
-CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-3-pyridyl,  
4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O-]benzyl,  
-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>NHC(NH)NH-SO<sub>2</sub>-4-methylphenyl,  
4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O-]benzyl,  
-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NHC(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>,  
-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NHC(O)NH-phenyl,  
-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NHC(O)NH-4-methoxyphenyl,  
4-[4'-pyridyl-C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[3'-pyridyl-C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)NH-3'-methylphenyl]benzyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)CH<sub>2</sub>NHC(O)NH-3'-methylphenyl]benzyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)-(2',3'-dihydroindol-2-yl)]benzyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)-(2',3'-dihydro-N-Boc-indol-2-yl)]benzyl,  
p-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-1'-(4'-pyrimidinyl)-piperazinyl]benzyl,  
4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-(1'-piperidinyl)]benzyl,  
4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-(1'-pyrrolidinyl)]benzyl,  
4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-(1'-piperidinyl)]benzyl-,  
-CH<sub>2</sub>-3-(1,2,4-triazolyl),  
4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-4-(3'-chlorophenyl)-piperazin-1-yl]benzyl,

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

5

10

15

20

25

30

4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>N(φ)CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>]benzyl,  
4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>-3'-(N-Boc)-piperidinyl]benzyl,  
4-[di-*n*-pentylamino]benzyl,  
4-[*n*-pentylamino]benzyl,  
4-[di-*iso*-propylamino-CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O-]benzyl,  
4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-(N-morpholinyl)]benzyl,  
4-[-O-(3'-(N-Boc)-piperidinyl)]benzyl,  
4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH(NHBoc)CH<sub>2</sub>cyclohexyl]benzyl,  
*p*-[OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-(N-piperidinyl)]benzyl,  
4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-(4-*m*-chlorophenyl)-piperazin-1-yl]benzyl,  
4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-(N-homopiperidinyl)]benzyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)-3'-(N-Boc)-piperidinyl]benzyl,  
4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>N(benzyl)<sub>2</sub>]benzyl,  
-CH<sub>2</sub>-2-thiazolyl,  
3-hydroxybenzyl,  
4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>N(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>]benzyl,  
4-[-NHC(S)NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-(N-morpholino)]benzyl,  
4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>N(C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>)<sub>2</sub>]benzyl,  
4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>N(C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>)<sub>2</sub>]benzyl,  
4-[CH<sub>3</sub>(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NH-]benzyl,  
4-[N-*n*-butyl,N-*n*-pentylamino-]benzyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)-4'-piperidinyl]benzyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)CH(NHBoc)(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NHCbz]benzyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)-(1',2',3',4'-tetrahydro-N-Boc-isoquinolin-1'-yl)]benzyl,  
*p*-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-1'-(4'-methyl)-piperazinyl]benzyl,  
-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NH-Boc,  
3-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>N(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>]benzyl,  
4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>N(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>]benzyl,  
3-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-(1'-pyrrolidinyl)]benzyl,  
4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>N(CH<sub>3</sub>)benzyl]benzyl,



5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

5

10

15

20

25

4-[-NHC(S)NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-(N-morpholino)]benzyl,  
4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-(N-morpholino)]benzyl,  
4-[-NHCH<sub>2</sub>-(4'-chlorophenyl)]benzyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)NH-(4'-cyanophenyl)]benzyl,  
4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>COOH]benzyl,  
4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>COO-*t*-butyl]benzyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)-5'-fluoroindol-2-yl]benzyl,  
4-[-NHC(S)NH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>-1-piperidinyl]benzyl,  
4-[-N(SO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>)(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>-N(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>]benzyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)CH<sub>2</sub>CH(C(O)OCH<sub>2</sub>φ)-NHCbz]benzyl,  
4-[-NHS(O)<sub>2</sub>CF<sub>3</sub>]benzyl,  
3-[-O-(N-methylpiperidin-4'-yl)]benzyl,  
4-[-C(=NH)NH<sub>2</sub>]benzyl,  
4-[-NHSO<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>Cl]benzyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)-(1',2',3',4'-tetrahydroisoquinolin-2'-yl)]benzyl,  
4-[-NHC(S)NH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>-N-morpholino]benzyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)CH(CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>)NHBoc]benzyl,  
4-[-C(O)NH<sub>2</sub>]benzyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)NH-3'-methoxyphenyl]benzyl,  
4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-indol-3'-yl]benzyl,  
4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-benzyl]benzyl,  
4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>C(O)O-benzyl]benzyl,  
4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>C(O)OH]benzyl,  
4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>-2'-(4',5'-dihydro)imidazolyl]benzyl,  
-CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>-(4-dimethylamino)phenyl,  
-CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>-(4-dimethylamino)phenyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)-L-2'-pyrrolidinyl-N-SO<sub>2</sub>-4'-methylphenyl]benzyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>]benzyl,  
4-aminobenzyl]benzyl,

4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-1-(4-hydroxy-4-(3-methoxypyrrol-2-yl)-  
piperazinyl)]benzyl,

4-[-O-(N-methylpiperidin-4'-yl)]benzyl,  
3-methoxybenzyl,

4-[-NHC(O)-piperidin-3'-yl]benzyl,

4-[-NHC(O)-pyridin-2'-yl]benzyl,

4-[-NHCH<sub>2</sub>-(4'-chlorophenyl)]benzyl,

4-[-NHC(O)-(N-(4'-CH<sub>3</sub>- $\phi$ -SO<sub>2</sub>)-L-pyrrolidin-2'-yl)]benzyl,

4-[-NHC(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>- $\phi$ ]benzyl,

4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH<sub>2</sub>]benzyl,

4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-*t*-butyl]benzyl,

4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-1-(4-hydroxy-4-phenyl)-piperidinyl]benzyl,

4-[-NHSO<sub>2</sub>-CH=CH<sub>2</sub>]benzyl,

4-[-NHSO<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>Cl]benzyl,

-CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>N(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>,

4-[(1'-Cbz-piperidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,

4-[(1'-Boc-piperidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,

4-[(2'-bromophenyl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,

4-[-NHC(O)-pyridin-4'-yl]benzyl,

4-[(4'-(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NC(O)O-)phenyl]-C(O)NH-]benzyl,

4-[-NHC(O)-1'-methylpiperidin-4'-yl-]benzyl,

4-(dimethylamino)benzyl,

4-[-NHC(O)-(1'-N-Boc)-piperidin-2'-yl]benzyl,

3-[-NHC(O)-pyridin-4'-yl]benzyl,

4-[(*tert*-butyl-O(O)CCH<sub>2</sub>-O-benzyl)-NH-]benzyl,

[BocNHCH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-]butyl,

4-benzylbenzyl,

2-hydroxyethyl,

4-[(Et)<sub>2</sub>NCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>NHC(S)NH-]benzyl,

4-[(1'-Boc-4'-hydroxypyrrolidin-2'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

5

10

15

20

25

30

4- $[\phi\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{NHC}(\text{S})\text{NH-}]$ benzyl,  
4- $[(\text{perhydroindolin-2'-yl})\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH-}]$ benzyl,  
2-[4-hydroxy-4-(3-methoxythien-2-yl)piperidin-1-yl]ethyl,  
4- $[(1'\text{-Boc-perhydroindolin-2'-yl})\text{-C}(\text{O})\text{NH-}]$ benzyl,  
4- $[N\text{-3-methylbutyl-}N\text{-trifluoromethanesulfonyl}]\text{amino}]$ benzyl,  
4- $[N\text{-vinylsulfonyl}]\text{amino}]$ benzyl,  
4-[2-(2-azabicyclo[3.2.2]octan-2-yl)ethyl-O-]benzyl,  
4-[4'-hydroxypyrrolidin-2'-yl] $\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH-}]$ benzyl,  
4- $(\phi\text{NHC}(\text{S})\text{NH})$ benzyl,  
4-(EtNHC(S)NH)benzyl,  
4- $(\phi\text{CH}_2\text{NHC}(\text{S})\text{NH})$ benzyl,  
3- $[(1'\text{-Boc-piperidin-2'-yl})\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH-}]$ benzyl,  
3-[piperidin-2'-yl-C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4- $[(3'\text{-Boc-thiazolidin-4'-yl})\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH-}]$ benzyl,  
4-(pyridin-3'-yl-NHC(S)NH)benzyl,  
4-(CH<sub>3</sub>-NHC(S)NH)benzyl,  
4-(H<sub>2</sub>NCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH)benzyl,  
4-(BocHNCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH)benzyl,  
4-(pyridin-4'-yl-CH<sub>2</sub>NH)benzyl,  
4- $[(N,N\text{-di}(4\text{-}N,N\text{-dimethylamino})\text{benzyl})\text{amino}]$ benzyl,  
4- $[(1\text{-Cbz-piperidin-4-yl})\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH-}]$ butyl,  
4- $[\phi\text{CH}_2\text{OCH}_2(\text{BocHN})\text{CHC}(\text{O})\text{NH}]$ benzyl,  
4- $[(\text{piperidin-4'-yl})\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH-}]$ benzyl,  
4- $[(\text{pyrrolidin-2'-yl})\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH-}]$ benzyl,  
4-(pyridin-3'-yl-C(O)NH)butyl,  
4-(pyridin-4'-yl-C(O)NH)butyl,  
4-(pyridin-3'-yl-C(O)NH)benzyl,  
4-[CH<sub>3</sub>NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[CH<sub>3</sub>N(Boc)CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-(aminomethyl)benzyl,

4- $[\phi\text{CH}_2\text{OCH}_2(\text{H}_2\text{N})\text{CHC}(\text{O})\text{NH}]$ benzyl,  
4- $[(1',4'\text{-di}(\text{Boc})\text{piperazin-2'-yl})\text{-C}(\text{O})\text{NH-}]$ benzyl,  
4- $[(\text{piperazin-2'-yl})\text{-C}(\text{O})\text{NH-}]$ benzyl,  
4- $[(N\text{-toluenesulfonylpyrrolidin-2'-yl})\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH-}]$ butyl,  
4- $[\text{-NHC}(\text{O})\text{-4'-piperidiny}]$ butyl,  
4- $[\text{-NHC}(\text{O})\text{-1'-N-Boc-piperidin-2'-yl}]$ benzyl,  
4- $[\text{-NHC}(\text{O})\text{-piperidin-2'-yl}]$ benzyl,  
4- $[(1'\text{-N-Boc-2',3'-dihydroindolin-2'-yl})\text{-C}(\text{O})\text{NH}]$ benzyl,  
4- $(\text{pyridin-3'-yl-CH}_2\text{NH})$ benzyl,  
4- $[(1'\text{-Cbz-piperidin-4'-yl})\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH-}]$ benzyl,  
4- $[(\text{piperidin-1'-yl})\text{C}(\text{O})\text{CH}_2\text{-O-}]$ benzyl,  
4- $[(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{CH}_2\text{NC}(\text{O})\text{CH}_2\text{-O-}]$ benzyl,  
4- $[\text{HO}(\text{O})\text{C}(\text{Cbz-NH})\text{CHCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{-C}(\text{O})\text{NH-}]$ benzyl,  
4- $[\phi\text{CH}_2\text{O}(\text{O})\text{C}(\text{Cbz-NH})\text{CHCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{-C}(\text{O})\text{NH-}]$ benzyl,  
4- $[\text{-NHC}(\text{O})\text{-2'-methoxyphenyl}]$ benzyl,  
4- $[(\text{pyrazin-2'-yl})\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH-}]$ benzyl,  
4- $[\text{HO}(\text{O})\text{C}(\text{NH}_2)\text{CHCH}_2\text{CH}_2\text{-C}(\text{O})\text{NH-}]$ benzyl,  
4- $(2'\text{-formyl-1',2',3',4'-tetrahydroisoquinolin-3'-yl-CH}_2\text{NH-})$ benzyl,  
 $N\text{-Cbz-NHCH}_2\text{-}$ ,  
4- $[(4'\text{-methylpiperazin-1'-yl})\text{C}(\text{O})\text{O-}]$ benzyl,  
4- $[\text{CH}_3(N\text{-Boc})\text{NCH}_2\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH-}]$ benzyl,  
4- $[\text{-NHC}(\text{O})\text{-(1',2',3',4'-tetrahydro-N-Boc-isoquinolin-3'-yl)-}]$ benzyl,  
4- $[\text{CH}_3\text{NHCH}_2\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH-}]$ benzyl,  
 $(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{NC}(\text{O})\text{CH}_2\text{-}$ ,  
4- $(N\text{-methylacetamido})$ benzyl,  
4- $(1',2',3',4'\text{-tetrahydroisoquinolin-3'-yl-CH}_2\text{NH-})$ benzyl,  
4- $[(\text{CH}_3)_2\text{NHCH}_2\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH-}]$ benzyl,  
 $(1\text{-toluenesulfonylimidizol-4-yl})$ methyl,  
4- $[(1'\text{-Boc-piperidin-4'-yl})\text{C}(\text{O})\text{NH-}]$ benzyl,  
4-trifluoromethylbenzyl,

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

5

10

15

20

25

30

4-[(2'-bromophenyl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NC(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[CH<sub>3</sub>OC(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NC(O)O-]benzyl,  
4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NC(O)N(CH<sub>3</sub>)-]benzyl,  
4-[CH<sub>3</sub>OC(O)N(CH<sub>3</sub>)-]benzyl,  
4-(*N*-methyltrifluoroacetamido)benzyl,  
4-[(1'-methoxycarbonylpiperidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[(4'-phenylpiperidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[(4'-phenyl-1'-Boc-piperidin-4'-yl)-C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[(piperidin-4'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl, 4-[(1'-methylpiperidin-4'-yl)-  
O-]benzyl,  
4-[(1'-methylpiperidin-4'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,  
4-[(4'-methylpiperazin-1'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
3-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NC(O)O-]benzyl,  
4-[(4'-phenyl-1'-Boc-piperidin-4'-yl)-C(O)O-]benzyl,  
4-(*N*-toluenesulfonylamino)benzyl,  
4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>CC(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[(morpholin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NC(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[-C(O)NH-(4'-piperidiny)]benzyl,  
4-[(2'-trifluoromethylphenyl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[(2'-methylphenyl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NS(O)<sub>2</sub>O-]benzyl,  
4-[(pyrrolidin-2'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)-piperidin-1'-yl]benzyl,  
4-[(thiomorpholin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[(thiomorpholin-4'-yl sulfone)-C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[(morpholin-4'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,  
3-nitro-4-(CH<sub>3</sub>OC(O)CH<sub>2</sub>O-)benzyl,

(2-benzoxazolinon-6-yl)methyl-,  
 (2*H*-1,4-benzoxazin-3(4*H*)-one-7-yl)methyl-,  
 4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NS(O)<sub>2</sub>NH-]benzyl,  
 4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NS(O)<sub>2</sub>N(CH<sub>3</sub>)-]benzyl,  
 4-[(thiomorpholin-4'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,  
 4-[(thiomorpholin-4'-yl sulfone)-C(O)O-]benzyl,  
 4-[(piperidin-1'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,  
 4-[(pyrrolidin-1'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,  
 4-[(4'-methylpiperazin-1'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,  
 4-[(2'-methylpyrrolidin-1'-yl)-,  
 (pyridin-4-yl)methyl-,  
 4-[(piperazin-4'-yl)-C(O)O-]benzyl,  
 4-[(1'-Boc-piperazin-4'-yl)-C(O)O-]benzyl,  
 4-[(4'-acetyl piperazin-1'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,  
*p*-[(4'-methanesulfonylpiperazin-1'-yl)-benzyl,  
 3-nitro-4-[(morpholin-4'-yl)-C(O)O-]benzyl,  
 4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NC(S)<sub>2</sub>N-]benzyl,  
*N*-Boc-2-aminoethyl-,  
 4-[(1,1-dioxothiomorpholin-4-yl)-C(O)O-]benzyl,  
 4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NS(O)<sub>2</sub>-]benzyl,  
 4-(imidazolid-2'-one-1'-yl)benzyl,  
 4-[(piperidin-1'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,  
 1-*N*-benzyl-imidazol-4-yl-CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
 3,4-dioxyethylenebenzyl,  
 3,4-dioxymethylenebenzyl,  
 4-[*N*(SO<sub>2</sub>)(CH<sub>3</sub>)CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>N(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>]benzyl,  
 4-(3'-formylimidazolid-2'-one-1'-yl)benzyl,  
 4-[NHC(O)CH(CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>)NHBoc]benzyl,  
 [2'-[4"-hydroxy-4"--(3'''-methoxythien-2'''-yl)piperidin-2"-  
 yl]ethoxy]benzyl, and

*p*-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>N(CH<sub>3</sub>)C(O)O-]benzyl.

In a preferred embodiment, R<sup>5</sup> is preferably selected from all possible isomers arising by substitution with the following groups:

- 5 3-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NC(O)O-]benzyl,
- 15 4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NC(O)O-]benzyl,
- 4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NS(O)<sub>2</sub>O-]benzyl,
- 4-[(piperidin-1'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,
- 4-[(piperidin-4'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,
- 20 10 4-[(1'-methylpiperidin-4'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,
- 4-[(4'-hydroxypiperidin-1'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,
- 4-[(4'-formyloxypiperidin-1'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,
- 25 4-[(4'-ethoxycarbonylpiperidin-1'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,
- 4-[(4'-carboxypiperidin-1'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,
- 15 4-[(3'-hydroxymethylpiperidin-1'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,
- 4-[(4'-hydroxymethylpiperidin-1'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,
- 30 4-[(4'-phenyl-1'-Boc-piperidin-4'-yl)-C(O)O-]benzyl,
- 4-[(4'-piperidon-1'-yl ethylene ketal)C(O)O-]benzyl,
- 4-[(piperazin-4'-yl)-C(O)O-]benzyl,
- 35 20 4-[(1'-Boc-piperazin-4'-yl)-C(O)O-]benzyl,
- 4-[(4'-methylpiperazin-1'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,
- 4-[(4'-methylhomopiperazin-1'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,
- 40 4-[(4'-(2-hydroxyethyl)piperazin-1'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,
- 4-[(4'-phenylpiperazin-1'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,
- 25 4-[(4'-(pyridin-2-yl)piperazin-1'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,
- 4-[(4'-(4-trifluoromethylpyridin-2-yl)piperazin-1'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,
- 45 4-[(4'-(pyrimidin-2-yl)piperazin-1'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,
- 4-[(4'-acetyl)piperazin-1'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,
- 4-[(4'-(phenylC(O)-)piperazin-1'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,
- 50 30 4-[(4'-(pyridin-4-ylC(O)-)piperazin-1'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,

4-[(4'-(phenylNHC(O)-)piperazin-1'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,  
 4-[(4'-(phenylNHC(S)-)piperazin-1'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,  
 4-[(4'-methanesulfonylpiperazin-1'-yl-C(O)O-]benzyl,  
 4-[(4'-trifluoromethanesulfonylpiperazin-1'-yl-C(O)O-]benzyl,  
 4-[(morpholin-4'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,  
 3-nitro-4-[(morpholin-4'-yl)-C(O)O-]benzyl,  
 4-[(thiomorpholin-4'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,  
 4-[(thiomorpholin-4'-yl sulfone)-C(O)O-]benzyl,  
 (alternative nomenclature 4-[(1,1-dioxothiomorpholin-4-yl)-  
 C(O)O-]benzyl),  
 4-[(pyrrolidin-1'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,  
 4-[(2'-methylpyrrolidin-1'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,  
 4-[(2'-(methoxycarbonyl)pyrrolidin-1'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,  
 4-[(2'-(hydroxymethyl)pyrrolidin-1'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,  
 4-[(2'-(N,N-dimethylamino)ethyl)(CH<sub>3</sub>)NC(O)O-]benzyl,  
 4-[(2'-(N-methyl-N-toluene-4-sulfonylamino)ethyl)(CH<sub>3</sub>)N-  
 C(O)O-]benzyl,  
 4-[(2'-(morpholin-4'-yl)ethyl)(CH<sub>3</sub>)NC(O)O-]benzyl,  
 4-[(2'-(hydroxy)ethyl)(CH<sub>3</sub>)NC(O)O-]benzyl,  
 4-[bis(2'-(hydroxy)ethyl)NC(O)O-]benzyl,  
 4-[(2'-(formyloxy)ethyl)(CH<sub>3</sub>)NC(O)O-]benzyl,  
 4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>OC(O)CH<sub>2</sub>)HNC(O)O-]benzyl,  
 4-[2'-(phenylNHC(O)O-)ethyl-]HNC(O)O-]benzyl,  
 3-chloro-4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NC(O)O-]benzyl,  
 3-chloro-4-[(4'-methylpiperazin-1'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,  
 3-chloro-4-[(4'-(pyridin-2-yl)piperazin-1'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,  
 3-chloro-4-[(thiomorpholin-4'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl, and  
 3-fluoro-4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NC(O)O-]benzyl.



In the compounds of formula IA, R<sup>6</sup> is preferably 2,4-dioxo-  
 tetrahydrofuran-3-yl (3,4-*enol*), methoxy, ethoxy, *iso*-propoxy, *n*-butoxy,  
*t*-butoxy, cyclopentoxy, *neo*-pentoxy, 2- $\alpha$ -*iso*-propyl-4- $\beta$ -  
 methylcyclohexoxy, 2- $\beta$ -isopropyl-4- $\beta$ -methylcyclohexoxy,  
 -NH<sub>2</sub>, benzyloxy, -NHCH<sub>2</sub>COOH, -NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>COOH, -NH-adamantyl,  
 -NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>COOCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>, -NHSO<sub>2</sub>-*p*-CH<sub>3</sub>- $\phi$ , -NHOR<sup>8</sup> where R<sup>8</sup> is  
 hydrogen, methyl, *iso*-propyl or benzyl, O-(N-succinimidyl),  
 -O-cholest-5-en-3- $\beta$ -yl, -OCH<sub>2</sub>-OC(O)C(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>, -O(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>z</sub>NHC(O)W where z  
 is 1 or 2 and W is selected from the group consisting of pyrid-3-yl, N-  
 methylpyridyl, and N-methyl-1,4-dihydro-pyrid-3-yl, -NR''C(O)-R' where  
 R' is aryl, heteroaryl or heterocyclic and R'' is hydrogen or  
 -CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>.

Preferred compounds within the scope of formula I and IA above  
 include by way of example:

*N*-[N-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-pyrrolidin-2-ylmethyl]-L-phenylalanine

*N*-[N-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolinyl]-N-hydroxy-L-phenylalanine

*N*-[N-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolinyl]-N-hydroxy-D-phenylalanine

*N*-[2-(N-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-pyrrolidinyl)-2-hydroxyacetyl]-L-4-  
 (N-benzyloxycarbonyl-isonipecotamido)phenylalanine

*N*-[2-(N-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-pyrrolidinyl)-2-hydroxyacetyl]-L-4-  
 (isonipecotamido)phenylalanine

(2S)-2-[5-(N-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)tetrazol-1-yl]-2-(4-  
 nitrobenzyl)propionic acid

(2S)-2-[5-(N-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)tetrazol-1-yl]-2-(4-  
 (N-*tert*-butoxycarbonylisonipecotamido)benzyl)propionic acid methyl  
 ester

(2S)-2-[5-(N-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)tetrazol-1-yl]-2-(4-  
 (N-*tert*-butoxycarbonylisonipecotamido)benzyl)propionic acid

N-[N-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl]aminocarbonyl]-L-phenylalanine

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof as well as any of the ester compounds recited above wherein one ester is replaced with another ester selected from the group consisting of methyl ester, ethyl ester, *n*-propyl ester, isopropyl ester, *n*-butyl ester, isobutyl ester, *sec*-butyl ester and *tert*-butyl ester.

This invention also provides methods for binding VLA-4 in a biological sample which method comprises contacting the biological sample with a compound of formula I or IA above under conditions wherein said compound binds to VLA-4.

Certain of the compounds of formula I and IA above are also useful in reducing VLA-4 mediated inflammation *in vivo*.

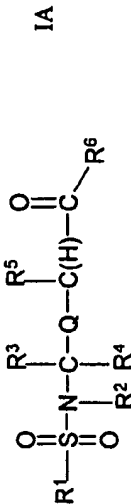
This invention also provides pharmaceutical compositions comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and a therapeutically effective amount of one or more of the compounds of formula I or IA above with the exception that R<sup>3</sup> and R<sup>5</sup> are derived from L-amino acids or other similarly configured starting materials. Alternatively, racemic mixtures can be used.

The pharmaceutical compositions may be used to treat VLA-4 mediated disease conditions. Such disease conditions include, by way of example, asthma, Alzheimer's disease, atherosclerosis, AIDS dementia, diabetes (including acute juvenile onset diabetes), inflammatory bowel disease (including ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease), multiple sclerosis, rheumatoid arthritis, tissue transplantation, tumor metastasis, meningitis, encephalitis, stroke, and other cerebral traumas, nephritis, retinitis, atopic

dermatitis, psoriasis, myocardial ischemia and acute leukocyte-mediated lung injury such as that which occurs in adult respiratory distress syndrome.

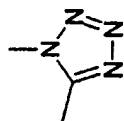
Accordingly, this invention also provides methods for the treatment of an inflammatory disease in a patient mediated by VLA-4 which methods comprise administering to the patient the pharmaceutical compositions described above.

Preferred compounds of formula I and IA above include those set forth in Table I below:



R <sup>1</sup>	R <sup>2</sup>	R <sup>3</sup>	R <sup>4</sup>	R <sup>5</sup>	R <sup>6</sup>	O
<i>p</i> -CH <sub>3</sub> -Ph	R <sup>2</sup> /R <sup>3</sup> = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)	-	-H	Ph-CH <sub>2</sub> -	-OH	-CH <sub>2</sub> -NH-
<i>p</i> -CH <sub>3</sub> -Ph	R <sup>2</sup> /R <sup>3</sup> = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)	-	-H	Ph-CH <sub>2</sub> - L-isomer	-OH	-C(O)N(O)-
<i>p</i> -CH <sub>3</sub> -Ph	R <sup>2</sup> /R <sup>3</sup> = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)	-	-H	Ph-CH <sub>2</sub> - D-isomer	-OH	-C(O)N(O)-
<i>p</i> -CH <sub>3</sub> -Ph	R <sup>2</sup> /R <sup>3</sup> = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)	-	-H	<i>p</i> -[(1-Boc-piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	-CH(OH)C(O)NH-
<i>p</i> -CH <sub>3</sub> -Ph	R <sup>2</sup> /R <sup>3</sup> = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)	-	-H	<i>p</i> -[(piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl-	-OH	-CH(OH)C(O)NH-
<i>p</i> -CH <sub>3</sub> -Ph	R <sup>2</sup> /R <sup>3</sup> = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyI)	-	-H	4-NO <sub>2</sub> -Ph-CH <sub>2</sub> -	-OH	tetrazol-1,5-diyl <sup>1</sup>

R <sup>1</sup>	R <sup>2</sup>	R <sup>3</sup>	R <sup>4</sup>	R <sup>5</sup>	R <sup>6</sup>	O
<i>p</i> -CH <sub>3</sub> -Ph-	R <sup>2</sup> /R <sup>3</sup> = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyl)	-	-H	<i>P</i> -[(1-Boc-piperidin-4-yl)(C(O)NH-)]benzyl-	-OCH <sub>3</sub>	tetrazol-1,5-diyl <sup>1</sup>
<i>p</i> -CH <sub>3</sub> -Ph-	R <sup>2</sup> /R <sup>3</sup> = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyl)	-	-H	<i>P</i> -[(1-Boc-piperidin-4-yl)(C(O)NH-)]benzyl-	-OH	tetrazol-1,5-diyl <sup>1</sup>
<i>p</i> -CH <sub>3</sub> -Ph-	R <sup>2</sup> /R <sup>3</sup> = cyclic 3 carbon atoms (L-pyrrolidinyl)	-	-H	Ph-CH <sub>2</sub> -	-OH	-NHC(O)NH-



=

1 tetrazol-1,5-diyl

**DETAILED DESCRIPTION OF THE INVENTION**

As above, this invention relates to compounds which inhibit leukocyte adhesion and, in particular, leukocyte adhesion mediated by VLA-4. When describing the compounds, compositions and methods of this invention, the following terms have the following meanings, unless otherwise indicated.

**Definitions**

As used herein, "alkyl" refers to alkyl groups preferably having from 1 to 10 carbon atoms and more preferably 1 to 6 carbon atoms. This term is exemplified by groups such as methyl, t-butyl, n-heptyl, octyl and the like.

"Substituted alkyl" refers to an alkyl group, preferably of from 1 to 10 carbon atoms, having from 1 to 5 substituents selected from the group consisting of alkoxy, substituted alkoxy, acyl, acylamino, thiocarbonylamino, acyloxy, amino, amidino, alkyl amidino, thioamidino, aminoacyl, aminocarbonylamino, aminothiocabonylamino, aminocarbonyloxy, aryl, substituted aryl, aryloxy, substituted aryloxy, aryloxyaryl, substituted aryloxyaryl, cyano, halogen, hydroxyl, nitro, carboxyl, carboxylalkyl, carboxyl-substituted alkyl, carboxyl-cycloalkyl, carboxyl-substituted cycloalkyl, carboxylaryl, carboxyl-substituted aryl, carboxylheteroaryl, carboxyl-substituted heteroaryl, carboxylheterocyclic, carboxyl-substituted heterocyclic, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, guanidino, guanidinosulfone, thiol, thioalkyl, substituted thioalkyl, thioaryl, substituted thioaryl, thiocycloalkyl, substituted thiocycloalkyl, thioheteroaryl, substituted thioheteroaryl, thioheterocyclic, substituted thioheterocyclic, heteroaryl, substituted aryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, cycloalkoxy, substituted cycloalkoxy, heteroaryloxy, substituted heteroaryloxy, heterocyclyloxy, substituted heterocyclyloxy, oxycarbonylamino, oxythiocarbonylamino, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-alkyl, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted alkyl, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-aryl, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted aryl, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-

heteroaryl, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted heteroaryl, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-heterocyclic, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted heterocyclic, -OSO<sub>2</sub>-NRR where R is hydrogen or alkyl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-alkyl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted alkyl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-aryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted aryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-heteroaryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted heteroaryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-heterocyclic, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted heterocyclic, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-alkyl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-substituted alkyl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-aryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-substituted aryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-heteroaryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-substituted heteroaryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-heterocyclic, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-substituted heterocyclic where R is hydrogen or alkyl, mono- and di-alkylamino, mono- and di-(substituted alkyl)amino, mono- and di-arylamino, mono- and di-substituted arylamino, mono- and di-heteroarylamino, mono- and di-substituted heteroarylamino, mono- and di-heterocyclic amino, mono- and di-substituted heterocyclic amino, unsymmetric di-substituted amines having different substituents selected from alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic and substituted heterocyclic and substituted alkyl groups having amino groups blocked by conventional blocking groups such as Boc, Cbz, formyl, and the like or alkyl/substituted alkyl groups substituted with -SO<sub>2</sub>-alkyl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-substituted alkyl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-alkenyl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-substituted alkenyl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-cycloalkyl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-substituted cycloalkyl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-aryl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-substituted aryl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-heteroaryl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-substituted heteroaryl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-heterocyclic, -SO<sub>2</sub>-substituted heterocyclic and -SO<sub>2</sub>NRR where R is hydrogen or alkyl.

"Alkoxy" refers to the group "alkyl-O-" which includes, by way of example, methoxy, ethoxy, *n*-propoxy, *iso*-propoxy, *n*-butoxy, *tert*-butoxy, *sec*-butoxy, *n*-pentoxy, *n*-hexoxy, 1,2-dimethylbutoxy, and the like.

"Substituted alkoxy" refers to the group "substituted alkyl-O-".

"Acyl" refers to the groups H-C(O)-, alkyl-C(O)-, substituted alkyl-C(O)-, alkenyl-C(O)-, substituted alkenyl-C(O)-, alkynyl-C(O)-, substituted

alkynyl-C(O)- cycloalkyl-C(O)-, substituted cycloalkyl-C(O)-, aryl-C(O)-, substituted aryl-C(O)-, heteroaryl-C(O)-, substituted heteroaryl-C(O), heterocyclic-C(O)-, and substituted heterocyclic-C(O)- wherein alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkenyl, substituted alkenyl, alkynyl, substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic and substituted heterocyclic are as defined herein.

"Acylamino" refers to the group -C(O)NRR where each R is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkenyl, substituted alkenyl, alkynyl, substituted alkynyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic and where each R is joined to form together with the nitrogen atom a heterocyclic or substituted heterocyclic ring wherein alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkenyl, substituted alkenyl, alkynyl, substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic and substituted heterocyclic are as defined herein.

"Thiocarbonylamino" refers to the group -C(S)NRR where each R is independently selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkenyl, substituted alkenyl, alkynyl, substituted alkynyl, aryl, substituted aryl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic and where each R is joined to form, together with the nitrogen atom a heterocyclic or substituted heterocyclic ring wherein alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkenyl, substituted alkenyl, alkynyl, substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic and substituted heterocyclic are as defined herein.



"Acyloxy" refers to the groups alkyl-C(O)O-, substituted alkyl-C(O)O-, alkenyl-C(O)O-, substituted alkenyl-C(O)O-, alkynyl-C(O)O-, substituted alkynyl-C(O)O-, aryl-C(O)O-, substituted aryl-C(O)O-, cycloalkyl-C(O)O-, substituted cycloalkyl-C(O)O-, heteroaryl-C(O)O-, substituted heteroaryl-C(O)O-, heterocyclic-C(O)O-, and substituted heterocyclic-C(O)O- wherein alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkenyl, substituted alkenyl, alkynyl, substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic and substituted heterocyclic are as defined herein.

"Alkenyl" refers to alkenyl group preferably having from 2 to 10 carbon atoms and more preferably 2 to 6 carbon atoms and having at least 1 and preferably from 1-2 sites of alkenyl unsaturation.

"Substituted alkenyl" refers to alkenyl groups having from 1 to 5 substituents selected from the group consisting of alkoxy, substituted alkoxy, acyl, acylamino, thiocarbonylamino, acyloxy, amino, amidino, alkylamidino, thioamidino, aminoacyl, aminocarbonylamino, aminothiocarbonylamino, aminocarbonyloxy, aryl, substituted aryl, aryloxy, substituted aryloxy, aryloxyaryl, substituted aryloxyaryl, halogen, hydroxyl, cyano, nitro, carboxyl, carboxylalkyl, carboxyl-substituted alkyl, carboxyl-cycloalkyl, carboxyl-substituted cycloalkyl, carboxylaryl, carboxyl-substituted aryl, carboxylheteroaryl, carboxyl-substituted heteroaryl, carboxylheterocyclic, carboxyl-substituted heterocyclic, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, guanidino, guanidinosulfone, thiol, thioalkyl, substituted thioalkyl, thioaryl, substituted thioaryl, thiocycloalkyl, substituted thiocycloalkyl, thioheteroaryl, substituted thioheteroaryl, thioheterocyclic, substituted thioheterocyclic, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, cycloalkoxy, substituted cycloalkoxy, heteroaryloxy, substituted heteroaryloxy, heterocyclyloxy, substituted heterocyclyloxy, oxycarbonylamino, oxythiocarbonylamino,

5 -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-alkyl, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted alkyl, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-aryl, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted  
10 aryl, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-heteroaryl, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted heteroaryl, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-  
heterocyclic, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted heterocyclic, -OSO<sub>2</sub>-NRR where R is  
hydrogen or alkyl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-alkyl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted alkyl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-  
5 aryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted aryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-heteroaryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted  
heteroaryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-heterocyclic, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted heterocyclic,  
15 -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-alkyl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-substituted alkyl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-aryl,  
-NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-substituted aryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-heteroaryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-  
substituted heteroaryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-heterocyclic, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-substituted  
20 heterocyclic where R is hydrogen or alkyl, mono- and di-alkylamino, mono-  
and di-(substituted alkyl)amino, mono- and di-arylamino, mono- and di-  
substituted arylamino, mono- and di-heteroarylamino, mono- and di-  
substituted heteroarylamino, mono- and di-heterocyclic amino, mono- and  
25 di-substituted heterocyclic amino, unsymmetric di-substituted amines having  
15 different substituents selected from alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted  
aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic and substituted  
heterocyclic and substituted alkenyl groups having amino groups blocked by  
conventional blocking groups such as Boc, Cbz, formyl, and the like or  
alkenyl/substituted alkenyl groups substituted with -SO<sub>2</sub>-alkyl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-  
20 substituted alkyl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-alkenyl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-substituted alkenyl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-cycloalkyl,  
35 -SO<sub>2</sub>-substituted cycloalkyl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-aryl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-substituted aryl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-  
heteroaryl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-substituted heteroaryl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-heterocyclic, -SO<sub>2</sub>-substituted  
heterocyclic and -SO<sub>2</sub>NRR where R is hydrogen or alkyl.

40 25 "Alkynyl" refers to alkynyl group preferably having from 2 to 10  
carbon atoms and more preferably 3 to 6 carbon atoms and having at least 1  
and preferably from 1-2 sites of alkynyl unsaturation.

45 30 "Substituted alkynyl" refers to alkynyl groups having from 1 to 5  
substituents selected from the group consisting of alkoxy, substituted alkoxy,  
50 acyl, acylamino, thiocarbonylamino, acyloxy, amino, amidino,

alkylamidino, thioamidino, aminoacyl, aminocarbonylamino,  
aminothiocarbonylamino, aminocarbonyloxy, aryl, substituted aryl, aryloxy,  
substituted aryloxy, aryloxyaryl, substituted aryloxyaryl, halogen, hydroxyl,  
cyano, nitro, carboxyl, carboxylalkyl, carboxyl-substituted alkyl, carboxyl-  
cycloalkyl, carboxyl-substituted cycloalkyl, carboxylaryl, carboxyl-  
substituted aryl, carboxylheteroaryl, carboxyl-substituted heteroaryl,  
carboxylheterocyclic, carboxyl-substituted heterocyclic, cycloalkyl,  
substituted cycloalkyl, guanidino, guanidinosulfone, thiol, thioalkyl,  
substituted thioalkyl, thioaryl, substituted thioaryl, thiocycloalkyl,  
substituted thiocycloalkyl, thioheteroaryl, substituted thioheteroaryl,  
thioheterocyclic, substituted thioheterocyclic, heteroaryl, substituted  
heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, cycloalkoxy, substituted  
cycloalkoxy, heteroaryloxy, substituted heteroaryloxy, heterocyclyloxy,  
substituted heterocyclyloxy, oxycarbonylamino, oxythiocarbonylamino,  
-OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-alkyl, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted alkyl, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-aryl, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted  
aryl, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-heteroaryl, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted heteroaryl, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-  
heterocyclic, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted heterocyclic, -OSO<sub>2</sub>-NRR where R is  
hydrogen or alkyl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-alkyl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted alkyl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-  
aryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted aryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-heteroaryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted  
heteroaryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-heterocyclic, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted heterocyclic,  
-NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-alkyl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-substituted alkyl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-aryl,  
-NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-substituted aryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-heteroaryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-  
substituted heteroaryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-heterocyclic, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-substituted  
heterocyclic where R is hydrogen or alkyl, mono- and di-alkylamino, mono-  
and di-(substituted alkyl)amino, mono- and di-arylamino, mono- and di-  
substituted arylamino, mono- and di-heteroarylamino, mono- and di-  
substituted heteroarylamino, mono- and di-heterocyclic amino, mono- and  
di-substituted heterocyclic amino, unsymmetric di-substituted amines having  
different substituents selected from alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted  
aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic and substituted  
heterocyclic and substituted alkynyl groups having amino groups blocked by

conventional blocking groups such as Boc, Cbz, formyl, and the like or alkynyl/substituted alkynyl groups substituted with -SO<sub>2</sub>-alkyl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-substituted alkyl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-alkenyl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-substituted alkenyl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-cycloalkyl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-substituted cycloalkyl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-aryl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-substituted aryl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-heteroaryl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-substituted heteroaryl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-heterocyclic, -SO<sub>2</sub>-substituted heterocyclic and -SO<sub>2</sub>NRR where R is hydrogen or alkyl.

"Amidino" refers to the group H<sub>2</sub>NC(=NH)- and the term "alkylamidino" refers to compounds having 1 to 3 alkyl groups (e.g., alkylHNC(=NH)-).

"Thioamidino" refers to the group RSC(=NH)- where R is hydrogen or alkyl.

"Aminoacyl" refers to the groups -NRC(O)alkyl, -NRC(O)substituted alkyl, -NRC(O)cycloalkyl, -NRC(O)substituted cycloalkyl, -NRC(O)alkenyl, -NRC(O)substituted alkenyl, -NRC(O)alkynyl, -NRC(O)substituted alkynyl, -NRC(O)aryl, -NRC(O)substituted aryl, -NRC(O)heteroaryl, -NRC(O)substituted heteroaryl, -NRC(O)heterocyclic, and -NRC(O)substituted heterocyclic where R is hydrogen or alkyl and wherein alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkenyl, substituted alkenyl, alkynyl, substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic and substituted heterocyclic are as defined herein.

"Aminocarbonyloxy" refers to the groups -NRC(O)O-alkyl, -NRC(O)O-substituted alkyl, -NRC(O)O-alkenyl, -NRC(O)O-substituted alkenyl, -NRC(O)O-alkynyl, -NRC(O)O-substituted alkynyl, -NRC(O)O-cycloalkyl, -NRC(O)O-substituted cycloalkyl, -NRC(O)O-aryl, -NRC(O)O-substituted aryl, -NRC(O)O-heteroaryl, -NRC(O)O-substituted heteroaryl,

-NRC(O)O-heterocyclic, and -NRC(O)O-substituted heterocyclic where R is hydrogen or alkyl and wherein alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkenyl, substituted alkenyl, alkynyl, substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic and substituted heterocyclic are as defined herein.

"Oxycarbonylamino" refers to the groups -OC(O)NH<sub>2</sub>, -OC(O)NRR, -OC(O)NR-alkyl, -OC(O)NR-substituted alkyl, -OC(O)NR-alkenyl, -OC(O)NR-substituted alkenyl, -OC(O)NR-alkynyl, -OC(O)NR-substituted alkynyl, -OC(O)NR-cycloalkyl, -OC(O)NR-substituted cycloalkyl, -OC(O)NR-aryl, -OC(O)NR-substituted aryl, -OC(O)NR-heteroaryl, -OC(O)NR-substituted heteroaryl, -OC(O)NR-heterocyclic, and -OC(O)NR-substituted heterocyclic where R is hydrogen, alkyl or where each R is joined to form, together with the nitrogen atom a heterocyclic or substituted heterocyclic ring and wherein alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkenyl, substituted alkenyl, alkynyl, substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic and substituted heterocyclic are as defined herein.

"Oxythiocarbonylamino" refers to the groups -OC(S)NH<sub>2</sub>, -OC(S)NRR, -OC(S)NR-alkyl, -OC(S)NR-substituted alkyl, -OC(S)NR-alkenyl, -OC(S)NR-substituted alkenyl, -OC(S)NR-alkynyl, -OC(S)NR-substituted alkynyl, -OC(S)NR-cycloalkyl, -OC(S)NR-substituted cycloalkyl, -OC(S)NR-aryl, -OC(S)NR-substituted aryl, -OC(S)NR-heteroaryl, -OC(S)NR-substituted heteroaryl, -OC(S)NR-heterocyclic, and -OC(S)NR-substituted heterocyclic where R is hydrogen, alkyl or where each R is joined to form together with the nitrogen atom a heterocyclic or substituted heterocyclic ring and wherein alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkenyl, substituted alkenyl, alkynyl, substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic and substituted heterocyclic are as defined herein.

"Aminocarbonylamino" refers to the groups -NRC(O)NRR, -NRC(O)NR-alkyl, -NRC(O)NR-substituted alkyl, -NRC(O)NR-alkenyl, -NRC(O)NR-substituted alkenyl, -NRC(O)NR-alkynyl, -NRC(O)NR-substituted alkynyl, -NRC(O)NR-aryl, -NRC(O)NR-substituted aryl, -NRC(O)NR-cycloalkyl, -NRC(O)NR-substituted cycloalkyl, -NRC(O)NR-heteroaryl, and -NRC(O)NR-substituted heteroaryl, -NRC(O)NR-heterocyclic, and -NRC(O)NR-substituted heterocyclic where each R is independently hydrogen, alkyl or where each R is joined to form together with the nitrogen atom a heterocyclic or substituted heterocyclic ring as well as where one of the amino groups is blocked by conventional blocking groups such as Boc, Cbz, formyl, and the like and wherein alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkenyl, substituted alkenyl, alkynyl, substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic and substituted heterocyclic are as defined herein.

"Aminothiocabonylamino" refers to the groups -NRC(S)NRR, -NRC(S)NR-alkyl, -NRC(S)NR-substituted alkyl, -NRC(S)NR-alkenyl, -NRC(S)NR-substituted alkenyl, -NRC(S)NR-alkynyl, -NRC(S)NR-substituted alkynyl, -NRC(S)NR-aryl, -NRC(S)NR-substituted aryl, -NRC(S)NR-cycloalkyl, -NRC(S)NR-substituted cycloalkyl, -NRC(S)NR-heteroaryl, and -NRC(S)NR-substituted heteroaryl, -NRC(S)NR-heterocyclic, and -NRC(S)NR-substituted heterocyclic where each R is independently hydrogen, alkyl or where each R is joined to form together with the nitrogen atom a heterocyclic or substituted heterocyclic ring as well as where one of the amino groups is blocked by conventional blocking groups such as Boc, Cbz, formyl, and the like and wherein alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkenyl, substituted alkenyl, alkynyl, substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic and substituted heterocyclic are as defined herein.

"Aryl" or "Ar" refers to an unsaturated aromatic carbocyclic group of from 6 to 14 carbon atoms having a single ring (e.g., phenyl) or multiple condensed rings (e.g., naphthyl or anthryl) which condensed rings may or may not be aromatic (e.g., 2-benzoxazolinone, 2H-1,4-benzoxazin-3(4H)-one-7yl, and the like). Preferred aryls include phenyl and naphthyl.

Substituted aryl refers to aryl groups which are substituted with from 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of hydroxy, acyl, acylamino, thiocarbonylamino, acyloxy, alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkoxy, substituted alkoxy, alkenyl, substituted alkenyl, alkynyl, substituted alkynyl, amidino, alkylamidino, thioamidino, amino, aminoacyl, aminocarbonyloxy, aminocarbonylamino, aminothiocarbonylamino, aryl, substituted aryl, aryloxy, substituted aryloxy, cycloalkoxy, substituted cycloalkoxy, heteroaryloxy, substituted heteroaryloxy, heterocyclyloxy, substituted heterocyclyloxy, carboxyl, carboxylalkyl, carboxyl-substituted alkyl, carboxyl-cycloalkyl, carboxyl-substituted cycloalkyl, carboxylaryl, carboxyl-substituted aryl, carboxylheteroaryl, carboxyl-substituted heteroaryl, carboxylheterocyclic, carboxyl-substituted heterocyclic, carboxylamido, cyano, thiol, thioalkyl, substituted thioalkyl, thioaryl, substituted thioaryl, thioheteroaryl, substituted thioheteroaryl, thiocycloalkyl, substituted thiocycloalkyl, thioheterocyclic, substituted thioheterocyclic, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, guanidino, guanidinosulfone, halo, nitro, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, cycloalkoxy, substituted cycloalkoxy, heteroaryloxy, substituted heteroaryloxy, heterocyclyloxy, substituted heterocyclyloxy, oxycarbonylamino, oxythiocarbonylamino, -S(O)<sub>2</sub>-alkyl, -S(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted alkyl, -S(O)<sub>2</sub>-cycloalkyl, -S(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted cycloalkyl, -S(O)<sub>2</sub>-alkenyl, -S(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted alkenyl, -S(O)<sub>2</sub>-aryl, -S(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted aryl, -S(O)<sub>2</sub>-heteroaryl, -S(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted heteroaryl, -S(O)<sub>2</sub>-heterocyclic, -S(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted heterocyclic, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-alkyl, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted alkyl, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-aryl, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted aryl, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-heteroaryl, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted heteroaryl, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-

heterocyclic,  $-\text{OS}(\text{O})_2$ -substituted heterocyclic,  $-\text{OSO}_2$ -NRR where R is hydrogen or alkyl,  $-\text{NRS}(\text{O})_2$ -alkyl,  $-\text{NRS}(\text{O})_2$ -substituted alkyl,  $-\text{NRS}(\text{O})_2$ -aryl,  $-\text{NRS}(\text{O})_2$ -substituted aryl,  $-\text{NRS}(\text{O})_2$ -heteroaryl,  $-\text{NRS}(\text{O})_2$ -substituted heteroaryl,  $-\text{NRS}(\text{O})_2$ -heterocyclic,  $-\text{NRS}(\text{O})_2$ -substituted heterocyclic,  $-\text{NRS}(\text{O})_2$ -NR-alkyl,  $-\text{NRS}(\text{O})_2$ -NR-substituted alkyl,  $-\text{NRS}(\text{O})_2$ -NR-aryl,  $-\text{NRS}(\text{O})_2$ -NR-substituted aryl,  $-\text{NRS}(\text{O})_2$ -NR-heteroaryl,  $-\text{NRS}(\text{O})_2$ -NR-substituted heteroaryl,  $-\text{NRS}(\text{O})_2$ -NR-heterocyclic,  $-\text{NRS}(\text{O})_2$ -NR-substituted heterocyclic where R is hydrogen or alkyl, mono- and di-alkylamino, mono- and di-(substituted alkyl)amino, mono- and di-arylamino, mono- and di-substituted arylamino, mono- and di-heteroarylamino, mono- and di-substituted heteroarylamino, mono- and di-heterocyclic amino, mono- and di-substituted heterocyclic amino, unsymmetric di-substituted amines having different substituents selected from alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic and substituted heterocyclic and amino groups on the substituted aryl blocked by conventional blocking groups such as Boc, Cbz, formyl, and the like or substituted with  $-\text{SO}_2\text{NRR}$  where R is hydrogen or alkyl.

"Aryloxy" refers to the group aryl-O- which includes, by way of example, phenoxy, naphthoxy, and the like.

"Substituted aryloxy" refers to substituted aryl-O- groups.

"Aryloxyaryl" refers to the group -aryl-O-aryl.

"Substituted aryloxyaryl" refers to aryloxyaryl groups substituted with from 1 to 3 substituents on either or both aryl rings selected from the group consisting of hydroxy, acyl, acylamino, thiocarbonylamino, acyloxy, alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkoxy, substituted alkoxy, alkenyl, substituted alkenyl, alkynyl, substituted alkynyl, amidino, alkylamidino, thioamidino, amino, aminoacyl, aminocarbonyloxy, aminocarbonylamino,



aminothiocarbonylamino, aryl, substituted aryl, aryloxy, substituted aryloxy,  
cycloalkoxy, substituted cycloalkoxy, heteroaryloxy, substituted  
heteroaryloxy, heterocyclyloxy, substituted heterocyclyloxy, carboxyl,  
carboxylalkyl, carboxyl-substituted alkyl, carboxyl-cycloalkyl, carboxyl-  
substituted cycloalkyl, carboxylaryl, carboxyl-substituted aryl,  
carboxylheteroaryl, carboxyl-substituted heteroaryl, carboxylheterocyclic,  
carboxyl-substituted heterocyclic, carboxylamido, cyano, thiol, thioalkyl,  
substituted thioalkyl, thioaryl, substituted thioaryl, thioheteroaryl,  
substituted thioheteroaryl, thiocycloalkyl, substituted thiocycloalkyl,  
thioheterocyclic, substituted thioheterocyclic, cycloalkyl, substituted  
cycloalkyl, guanidino, guanidinosulfone, halo, nitro, heteroaryl, substituted  
heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, cycloalkoxy, substituted  
cycloalkoxy, heteroaryloxy, substituted heteroaryloxy, heterocyclyloxy,  
substituted heterocyclyloxy, oxycarbonylamino, oxythiocarbonylamino,  
-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-alkyl, -S(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted alkyl, -S(O)<sub>2</sub>-cycloalkyl, -S(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted  
cycloalkyl, -S(O)<sub>2</sub>-alkenyl, -S(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted alkenyl, -S(O)<sub>2</sub>-aryl, -S(O)<sub>2</sub>-  
substituted aryl, -S(O)<sub>2</sub>-heteroaryl, -S(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted heteroaryl, -S(O)<sub>2</sub>-  
heterocyclic, -S(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted heterocyclic, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-alkyl, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-  
substituted alkyl, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-aryl, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted aryl, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-heteroaryl,  
-OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted heteroaryl, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-heterocyclic, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted  
heterocyclic, -OSO<sub>2</sub>-NRR where R is hydrogen or alkyl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-alkyl,  
-NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted alkyl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-aryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted aryl,  
-NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-heteroaryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted heteroaryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-  
heterocyclic, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted heterocyclic, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-alkyl,  
-NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-substituted alkyl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-aryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-  
substituted aryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-heteroaryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-substituted  
heteroaryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-heterocyclic, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-substituted  
heterocyclic where R is hydrogen or alkyl, mono- and di-alkylamino, mono-  
and di-(substituted alkyl)amino, mono- and di-arylamino, mono- and di-  
substituted arylamino, mono- and di-heteroarylamino, mono- and di-  
substituted heteroarylamino, mono- and di-heterocyclic amino, mono- and

5 di-substituted heterocyclic amino, unsymmetric di-substituted amines having  
different substituents selected from alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted  
10 aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic and substituted  
heterocyclic and amino groups on the substituted aryl blocked by  
5 conventional blocking groups such as Boc, Cbz, formyl, and the like or  
substituted with  $-SO_2NRR$  where R is hydrogen or alkyl.

15 "Cycloalkyl" refers to cyclic alkyl groups of from 3 to 8 carbon  
atoms having a single cyclic ring including, by way of example,  
20 cyclopropyl, cyclobutyl, cyclopentyl, cyclooctyl and the like. Excluded  
from this definition are multi-ring alkyl groups such as adamantanyl, etc.

25 "Cycloalkenyl" refers to cyclic alkenyl groups of from 3 to 8 carbon  
atoms having single or multiple unsaturation but which are not aromatic.

15 "Substituted cycloalkyl" and "substituted cycloalkenyl" refer to a  
cycloalkyl and cycloalkenyl groups, preferably of from 3 to 8 carbon atoms,  
30 having from 1 to 5 substituents selected from the group consisting of oxo  
(=O), thioxo (=S), alkoxy, substituted alkoxy, acyl, acylamino,  
20 thiocarbonylamino, acyloxy, amino, amidino, alkylamidino, thioamidino,  
35 aminoacyl, aminocarbonylamino, aminothiobonylamino,  
aminocarbonyloxy, aryl, substituted aryl, aryloxy, substituted aryloxy,  
aryloxyaryl, substituted aryloxyaryl, halogen, hydroxyl, cyano, nitro,  
40 carboxyl, carboxylalkyl, carboxyl-substituted alkyl, carboxyl-cycloalkyl,  
25 carboxyl-substituted cycloalkyl, carboxylaryl, carboxyl-substituted aryl,  
carboxylheteroaryl, carboxyl-substituted heteroaryl, carboxylheterocyclic,  
45 carboxyl-substituted heterocyclic, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl,  
guanidino, guanidinosulfone, thiol, thioalkyl, substituted thioalkyl, thioaryl,  
substituted thioaryl, thiocycloalkyl, substituted thiocycloalkyl,  
30 thioheteroaryl, substituted thioheteroaryl, thioheterocyclic, substituted  
thioheterocyclic, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted

heterocyclic, cycloalkoxy, substituted cycloalkoxy, heteroaryloxy,  
substituted heteroaryloxy, heterocyclyloxy, substituted heterocyclyloxy,  
oxycarbonylamino, oxythiocarbonylamino, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-alkyl, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-  
substituted alkyl, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-aryl, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted aryl, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-heteroaryl,  
-OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted heteroaryl, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-heterocyclic, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted  
heterocyclic, -OSO<sub>2</sub>-NRR where R is hydrogen or alkyl,  
-NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-alkyl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted alkyl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-aryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-  
substituted aryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-heteroaryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted heteroaryl,  
-NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-heterocyclic, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted heterocyclic,  
-NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-alkyl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-substituted alkyl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-aryl,  
-NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-substituted aryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-heteroaryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-  
substituted heteroaryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-heterocyclic, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-substituted  
heterocyclic where R is hydrogen or alkyl, mono- and di-alkylamino, mono-  
and di-(substituted alkyl)amino, mono- and di-arylamino, mono- and di-  
substituted arylamino, mono- and di-heteroarylamino, mono- and di-  
substituted heteroarylamino, mono- and di-heterocyclic amino, mono- and  
di-substituted heterocyclic amino, unsymmetric di-substituted amines having  
different substituents selected from alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted  
aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic and substituted  
heterocyclic and substituted alkynyl groups having amino groups blocked by  
conventional blocking groups such as Boc, Cbz, formyl, and the like or  
alkynyl/substituted alkynyl groups substituted with -SO<sub>2</sub>-alkyl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-  
substituted alkyl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-alkenyl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-substituted alkenyl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-cycloalkyl,  
-SO<sub>2</sub>-substituted cycloalkyl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-aryl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-substituted aryl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-  
heteroaryl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-substituted heteroaryl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-heterocyclic, -SO<sub>2</sub>-substituted  
heterocyclic and -SO<sub>2</sub>NRR where R is hydrogen or alkyl.

"Cycloalkoxy" refers to -O-cycloalkyl groups.

"Substituted cycloalkoxy" refers to -O-substituted cycloalkyl groups.

"Guanidino" refers to the groups -NRC(=NR)NRR,

-NRC(=NR)NR-alkyl, -NRC(=NR)NR-substituted alkyl, -NRC(=NR)NR-alkenyl, -NRC(=NR)NR-substituted alkenyl, -NRC(=NR)NR-alkynyl, -NRC(=NR)NR-substituted alkynyl, -NRC(=NR)NR-aryl, -NRC(=NR)NR-substituted aryl, -NRC(=NR)NR-cycloalkyl, -NRC(=NR)NR-heteroaryl, -NRC(=NR)NR-substituted heteroaryl, -NRC(=NR)NR-heterocyclic, and -NRC(=NR)NR-substituted heterocyclic where each R is independently hydrogen and alkyl as well as where one of the amino groups is blocked by conventional blocking groups such as Boc, Cbz, formyl, and the like and wherein alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkenyl, substituted alkenyl, alkynyl, substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic and substituted heterocyclic are as defined herein.

"Guanidinosulfone" refers to the groups -NRC(=NR)NRSO<sub>2</sub>-alkyl, -NRC(=NR)NRSO<sub>2</sub>-substituted alkyl, -NRC(=NR)NRSO<sub>2</sub>-alkenyl, -NRC(=NR)NRSO<sub>2</sub>-substituted alkenyl, -NRC(=NR)NRSO<sub>2</sub>-alkynyl, -NRC(=NR)NRSO<sub>2</sub>-substituted alkynyl, -NRC(=NR)NRSO<sub>2</sub>-aryl, -NRC(=NR)NRSO<sub>2</sub>-substituted aryl, -NRC(=NR)NRSO<sub>2</sub>-cycloalkyl, -NRC(=NR)NRSO<sub>2</sub>-substituted cycloalkyl, -NRC(=NR)NRSO<sub>2</sub>-heteroaryl, and -NRC(=NR)NRSO<sub>2</sub>-substituted heteroaryl, -NRC(=NR)NRSO<sub>2</sub>-heterocyclic, and -NRC(=NR)NRSO<sub>2</sub>-substituted heterocyclic where each R is independently hydrogen and alkyl and wherein alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkenyl, substituted alkenyl, alkynyl, substituted alkynyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic and substituted heterocyclic are as defined herein.

"Halo" or "halogen" refers to fluoro, chloro, bromo and iodo and preferably is either chloro or bromo.

"Heteroaryl" refers to an aromatic carbocyclic group of from 2 to 10 carbon atoms and 1 to 4 heteroatoms selected from oxygen, nitrogen and

sulfur within the ring. Such heteroaryl groups can have a single ring (e.g., pyridyl or furyl) or multiple condensed rings (e.g., indolizinyll or benzothiényl). Preferred heteroaryls include pyridyl, pyrrolyl, indolyl and furyl.

5

"Substituted heteroaryl" refers to heteroaryl groups which are substituted with from 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting of hydroxy, acyl, acylamino, thiocarbonylamino, acyloxy, alkyl, substituted alkyl, alkoxy, substituted alkoxy, alkenyl, substituted alkenyl, alkynyl, substituted alkynyl, amidino, alkylamidino, thioamidino, amino, aminoacyl, aminocarbonyloxy, aminocarbonylamino, aminothiocarbonylamino, aryl, substituted aryl, aryloxy, substituted aryloxy, cycloalkoxy, substituted cycloalkoxy, heteroaryloxy, substituted heteroaryloxy, heterocyclyloxy, substituted heterocyclyloxy, carboxyl, carboxylalkyl, carboxyl-substituted alkyl, carboxyl-cycloalkyl, carboxyl-substituted cycloalkyl, carboxylaryl, carboxyl-substituted aryl, carboxylheteroaryl, carboxyl-substituted heteroaryl, carboxylheterocyclic, carboxyl-substituted heterocyclic, carboxylamido, cyano, thiol, thioalkyl, substituted thioalkyl, thioaryl, substituted thioaryl, thioheteroaryl, substituted thioheteroaryl, thiocycloalkyl, substituted thiocycloalkyl, thioheterocyclic, substituted thioheterocyclic, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, guanidino, guanidinosulfone, halo, nitro, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, cycloalkoxy, substituted cycloalkoxy, heteroaryloxy, substituted heteroaryloxy, heterocyclyloxy, substituted heterocyclyloxy, oxycarbonylamino, oxythiocarbonylamino, -S(O)<sub>2</sub>-alkyl, -S(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted alkyl, -S(O)<sub>2</sub>-cycloalkyl, -S(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted cycloalkyl, -S(O)<sub>2</sub>-alkenyl, -S(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted alkenyl, -S(O)<sub>2</sub>-aryl, -S(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted aryl, -S(O)<sub>2</sub>-heteroaryl, -S(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted heteroaryl, -S(O)<sub>2</sub>-heterocyclic, -S(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted heterocyclic, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-alkyl, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted alkyl,

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

-OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-aryl, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted aryl, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-heteroaryl, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted heteroaryl, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-heterocyclic, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted heterocyclic, -OSO<sub>2</sub>-NRR where R is hydrogen or alkyl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-alkyl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted alkyl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-aryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted aryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-heteroaryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted heteroaryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-heterocyclic, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted heterocyclic, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-alkyl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-substituted alkyl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-aryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-substituted aryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-heteroaryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-substituted heteroaryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-heterocyclic, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-substituted heterocyclic where R is hydrogen or alkyl, mono- and di-alkylamino, mono- and di-(substituted alkyl)amino, mono- and di-arylamino, mono- and di-substituted arylamino, mono- and di-heteroarylamino, mono- and di-substituted heteroarylamino, mono- and di-heterocyclic amino, mono- and di-substituted heterocyclic amino, unsymmetric di-substituted amines having different substituents selected from alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic and substituted heterocyclic and amino groups on the substituted aryl blocked by conventional blocking groups such as Boc, Cbz, formyl, and the like or substituted with -SO<sub>2</sub>NRR where R is hydrogen or alkyl.

"Heteroaryloxy" refers to the group -O-heteroaryl and "substituted heteroaryloxy" refers to the group -O-substituted heteroaryl.

"Heterocycle" or "heterocyclic" refers to a saturated or unsaturated group having a single ring or multiple condensed rings, from 1 to 10 carbon atoms and from 1 to 4 hetero atoms selected from nitrogen, sulfur or oxygen within the ring wherein, in fused ring systems, one or more of the rings can be aryl or heteroaryl.

"Substituted heterocyclic" refers to heterocycle groups which are substituted with from 1 to 3 substituents selected from the group consisting

of oxo (=O), thioxo (=S), alkoxy, substituted alkoxy, acyl, acylamino, thiocarbonylamino, acyloxy, amino, amidino, alkylamidino, thioamidino, aminoacyl, aminocarbonylamino, aminothiocarbonylamino, aminocarbonyloxy, aryl, substituted aryl, aryloxy, substituted aryloxy, aryloxyaryl, substituted aryloxyaryl, halogen, hydroxyl, cyano, nitro, carboxyl, carboxylalkyl, carboxyl-substituted alkyl, carboxyl-cycloalkyl, carboxyl-substituted cycloalkyl, carboxylaryl, carboxyl-substituted aryl, carboxylheteroaryl, carboxyl-substituted heteroaryl, carboxylheterocyclic, carboxyl-substituted heterocyclic, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, guanidino, guanidinosulfone, thiol, thioalkyl, substituted thioalkyl, thioaryl, substituted thioaryl, thiocycloalkyl, substituted thiocycloalkyl, thioheteroaryl, substituted thioheteroaryl, thioheterocyclic, substituted thioheterocyclic, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, cycloalkoxy, substituted cycloalkoxy, heteroaryloxy, substituted heteroaryloxy, heterocyclyloxy, substituted heterocyclyloxy, oxycarbonylamino, oxythiocarbonylamino, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-alkyl, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted alkyl, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-aryl, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted aryl, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-heteroaryl, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted heteroaryl, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-heterocyclic, -OS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted heterocyclic, -OSO<sub>2</sub>-NRR where R is hydrogen or alkyl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-alkyl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted alkyl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-aryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted aryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-heteroaryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted heteroaryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-heterocyclic, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-substituted heterocyclic, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-alkyl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-substituted alkyl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-aryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-substituted aryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-heteroaryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-substituted heteroaryl, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-heterocyclic, -NRS(O)<sub>2</sub>-NR-substituted heterocyclic where R is hydrogen or alkyl, mono- and di-alkylamino, mono- and di-(substituted alkyl)amino, mono- and di-arylamino, mono- and di-substituted arylamino, mono- and di-heteroarylamino, mono- and di-substituted heteroarylamino, mono- and di-heterocyclic amino, mono- and di-substituted heterocyclic amino, unsymmetric di-substituted amines having different substituents selected from alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted

aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic and substituted heterocyclic and substituted alkynyl groups having amino groups blocked by conventional blocking groups such as Boc, Cbz, formyl, and the like or alkynyl/substituted alkynyl groups substituted with -SO<sub>2</sub>-alkyl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-substituted alkyl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-alkenyl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-substituted alkenyl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-cycloalkyl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-substituted cycloalkyl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-aryl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-substituted aryl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-heteroaryl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-substituted heteroaryl, -SO<sub>2</sub>-heterocyclic, -SO<sub>2</sub>-substituted heterocyclic and -SO<sub>2</sub>NRR where R is hydrogen or alkyl.

Examples of heterocycles and heteroaryls include, but are not limited to, azetidine, pyrrole, imidazole, pyrazole, pyridine, pyrazine, pyrimidine, pyridazine, indolizine, isoindole, indole, dihydroindole, indazole, purine, quinolizine, isoquinoline, quinoline, phthalazine, naphthylpyridine, quinoxaline, quinazoline, cinnoline, pteridine, carbazole, carboline, phenanthridine, acridine, phenanthroline, isothiazole, phenazine, isoxazole, phenoxazine, phenothiazine, imidazolidine, imidazoline, piperidine, piperazine, indoline, phthalimide, 1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline, 4,5,6,7-tetrahydrobenzo[b]thiophene, thiazole, thiazolidine, thiophene, benzo[b]thiophene, morpholino, thiomorpholino, piperidinyl, pyrrolidine, tetrahydrofuranlyl, and the like.

"Heterocyclyloxy" refers to the group -O-heterocyclic and "substituted heterocyclyloxy" refers to the group -O-substituted heterocyclic.

"Thiol" refers to the group -SH.

"Thioalkyl" refers to the groups -S-alkyl

"Substituted thioalkyl" refers to the group -S-substituted alkyl.

"Thiocycloalkyl" refers to the groups -S-cycloalkyl.



"Substituted thiocycloalkyl" refers to the group -S-substituted cycloalkyl.

"Thioaryl" refers to the group -S-aryl and "substituted thioaryl" refers to the group -S-substituted aryl.

"Thioheteroaryl" refers to the group -S-heteroaryl and "substituted thioheteroaryl" refers to the group -S-substituted heteroaryl.

"Thioheterocyclic" refers to the group -S-heterocyclic and "substituted thioheterocyclic" refers to the group -S-substituted heterocyclic.

"Pharmaceutically acceptable salt" refers to pharmaceutically acceptable salts of a compound of Formula I which salts are derived from a variety of organic and inorganic counter ions well known in the art and include, by way of example only, sodium, potassium, calcium, magnesium, ammonium, tetraalkylammonium, and the like; and when the molecule contains a basic functionality, salts of organic or inorganic acids, such as hydrochloride, hydrobromide, tartrate, mesylate, acetate, maleate, oxalate and the like.

#### Compound Preparation

The compounds of this invention can be prepared from readily available starting materials using the following general methods and procedures. It will be appreciated that where typical or preferred process conditions (i.e., reaction temperatures, times, mole ratios of reactants, solvents, pressures, etc.) are given, other process conditions can also be used unless otherwise stated. Optimum reaction conditions may vary with the particular reactants or solvent used, but such conditions can be determined by one skilled in the art by routine optimization procedures.

5  
10  
15  
20  
25  
30  
35  
40  
45  
50  
55

Additionally, as will be apparent to those skilled in the art, conventional protecting groups may be necessary to prevent certain functional groups from undergoing undesired reactions. Suitable protecting groups for various functional groups as well as suitable conditions for protecting and deprotecting particular functional groups are well known in the art. For example, numerous protecting groups are described in T. W. Greene and G. M. Wuts, *Protecting Groups in Organic Synthesis*, Second Edition, Wiley, New York, 1991, and references cited therein.

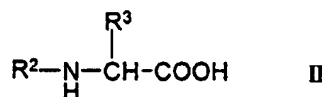
10  
15  
20  
25  
30  
35  
40  
45  
50  
55

Furthermore, the compounds of this invention will typically contain one or more chiral centers. Accordingly, if desired, such compounds can be prepared or isolated as pure stereoisomers, i.e., as individual enantiomers or diastereomers, or as stereoisomer-enriched mixtures. All such stereoisomers (and enriched mixtures) are included within the scope of this invention, unless otherwise indicated. Pure stereoisomers (or enriched mixtures) may be prepared using, for example, optically active starting materials or stereoselective reagents well-known in the art. Alternatively, racemic mixtures of such compounds can be separated using, for example, chiral column chromatography, chiral resolving agents and the like.

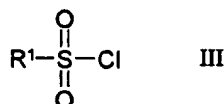
10  
15  
20  
25  
30  
35  
40  
45  
50  
55

In a preferred embodiment, the compounds of formula I and IA wherein Q is a tetrazol-1,5-diyl moiety are readily prepared by contacting the corresponding amide, i.e., where Q is  $-C(O)NH-$ , with an equimolar amount of phosphorus pentachloride ( $PCl_5$ ) in an anhydrous inert solvent, such as benzene, followed by treatment of the resulting imino chloride with hydrazoic acid ( $HN_3$ ). Typically, this reaction is conducted by contacting the amide with  $PCl_5$  at ambient temperature for about 90 minutes. The resulting imino chloride is typically not isolated, but is reacted *in situ* with an equimolar amount of hydrazoic acid at ambient temperature for about 2 hours to afford the tetrazole.

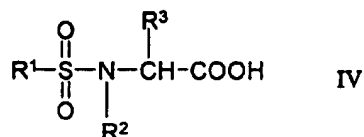
The amide intermediates, i.e. where Q is -C(O)NH-, employed in this reaction are readily prepared by first coupling an amino acid of formula II:



wherein R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> are as defined herein (e.g., in formula I and IIA), with a sulfonyl chloride of formula III:



wherein R<sup>1</sup> is as defined herein, to provide an *N*-sulfonyl amino acid of formula IV:



wherein R<sup>1</sup>-R<sup>3</sup> are as defined herein.

This reaction is typically conducted by reacting the amino acid of formula II with at least one equivalent, preferably about 1.1 to about 2 equivalents, of sulfonyl chloride III in an inert diluent such as dichloromethane and the like. Generally, the reaction is conducted at a temperature ranging from about -70°C to about 40°C for about 1 to about 24 hours. Preferably, this reaction is conducted in the presence of a suitable base to scavenge the acid generated during the reaction. Suitable bases include, by way of example, tertiary amines, such as triethylamine,

5  
10  
15  
20  
25  
30  
35  
40  
45  
50  
55

diisopropylethylamine, *N*-methylmorpholine and the like. Alternatively, the reaction can be conducted under Schotten-Baumann-type conditions using aqueous alkali, such as sodium hydroxide and the like, as the base. Upon completion of the reaction, the resulting *N*-sulfonyl amino acid IV is recovered by conventional methods including neutralization, extraction, precipitation, chromatography, filtration, and the like.

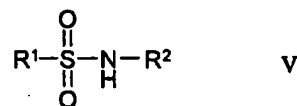
The amino acids of formula II employed in the above reaction are either known compounds or compounds that can be prepared from known compounds by conventional synthetic procedures. Examples of suitable amino acids for use in this reaction include, but are not limited to, L-proline, *trans*-4-hydroxyl-L-proline, *cis*-4-hydroxyl-L-proline, *trans*-3-phenyl-L-proline, *cis*-3-phenyl-L-proline, L-(2-methyl)proline, L-pipecolic acid, L-azetidine-2-carboxylic acid, L-indoline-2-carboxylic acid, L-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, L-thiazolidine-4-carboxylic acid, L-(5,5-dimethyl)thiazolidine-4-carboxylic acid, L-thiamorpholine-3-carboxylic acid, glycine, 2-*tert*-butylglycine, D,L-phenylglycine, L-alanine,  $\alpha$ -methylalanine, *N*-methyl-L-phenylalanine, L-diphenylalanine, sarcosine, D,L-phenylsarcosine, L-aspartic acid  $\beta$ -*tert*-butyl ester, L-glutamic acid  $\gamma$ -*tert*-butyl ester, L-(*O*-benzyl)serine, 1-aminocyclopropanecarboxylic acid, 1-aminocyclobutanecarboxylic acid, 1-aminocyclopentanecarboxylic acid (cycloleucine) 1-aminocyclohexanecarboxylic acid, L-serine and the like. If desired, the corresponding carboxylic acid esters of the amino acids of formula II, such as the methyl esters, ethyl esters and the like, can be employed in the above reaction with the sulfonyl chloride III. Subsequent hydrolysis of the ester group to the carboxylic acid using conventional reagents and conditions, i.e., treatment with an alkali metal hydroxide in an inert diluent such as methanol/water, then provides the *N*-sulfonyl amino acid IV.

Similarly, the sulfonyl chlorides of formula III employed in the above reaction are either known compounds or compounds that can be prepared from known compounds by conventional synthetic procedures. Such compounds are typically prepared from the corresponding sulfonic acid, i.e., from compounds of the formula  $R^1-SO_3H$  where  $R^1$  is as defined above, using phosphorous trichloride and phosphorous pentachloride. This reaction is generally conducted by contacting the sulfonic acid with about 2 to 5 molar equivalents of phosphorous trichloride and phosphorous pentachloride, either neat or in an inert solvent, such as dichloromethane, at temperature in the range of about 0°C to about 80°C for about 1 to about 48 hours to afford the sulfonyl chloride. Alternatively, the sulfonyl chlorides of formula III can be prepared from the corresponding thiol compound, i.e., from compounds of the formula  $R^1-SH$  where  $R^1$  is as defined herein, by treating the thiol with chlorine ( $Cl_2$ ) and water under conventional reaction conditions.

Examples of sulfonyl chlorides suitable for use in this invention include, but are not limited to, methanesulfonyl chloride, 2-propanesulfonyl chloride, 1-butesulfonyl chloride, benzenesulfonyl chloride, 1-naphthalenesulfonyl chloride, 2-naphthalenesulfonyl chloride, *p*-toluenesulfonyl chloride,  $\alpha$ -toluenesulfonyl chloride, 4-acetamidobenzenesulfonyl chloride, 4-amidinobenzenesulfonyl chloride, 4-*tert*-butylbenzenesulfonyl chloride, 4-bromobenzenesulfonyl chloride, 2-carboxybenzenesulfonyl chloride, 4-cyanobenzenesulfonyl chloride, 3,4-dichlorobenzenesulfonyl chloride, 3,5-dichlorobenzenesulfonyl chloride, 3,4-dimethoxybenzenesulfonyl chloride, 3,5-ditrifluoromethylbenzenesulfonyl chloride, 4-fluorobenzenesulfonyl chloride, 4-methoxybenzenesulfonyl chloride, 2-methoxycarbonylbenzenesulfonyl chloride, 4-methylamidobenzenesulfonyl chloride, 4-nitrobenzenesulfonyl chloride, 4-thioamidobenzenesulfonyl chloride, 4-trifluoromethylbenzenesulfonyl chloride, 4-trifluoromethoxybenzenesulfonyl

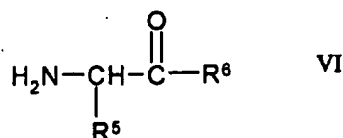
chloride, 2,4,6-trimethylbenzenesulfonyl chloride, 2-phenylethanesulfonyl chloride, 2-thiophenesulfonyl chloride, 5-chloro-2-thiophenesulfonyl chloride, 2,5-dichloro-4-thiophenesulfonyl chloride, 2-thiazolesulfonyl chloride, 2-methyl-4-thiazolesulfonyl chloride, 1-methyl-4-imidazolesulfonyl chloride, 1-methyl-4-pyrazolesulfonyl chloride, 5-chloro-1,3-dimethyl-4-pyrazolesulfonyl chloride, 3-pyridinesulfonyl chloride, 2-pyrimidinesulfonyl chloride and the like. If desired, a sulfonyl fluoride, sulfonyl bromide or sulfonic acid anhydride may be used in place of the sulfonyl chloride in the above reaction to form the *N*-sulfonyl amino acids of formula IV.

The intermediate *N*-sulfonyl amino acids of formula IV can also be prepared by reacting a sulfonamide of formula V:



wherein R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> are as defined herein, with a carboxylic acid derivative of the formula L(R<sup>3</sup>)CHCOOR where L is a leaving group, such as chloro, bromo, iodo, mesylate, tosylate and the like, R<sup>3</sup> is as defined herein and R is hydrogen or an alkyl group. This reaction is typically conducted by contacting the sulfonamide V with at least one equivalent, preferably 1.1 to 2 equivalents, of the carboxylic acid derivative in the presence of a suitable base, such as triethylamine, in an inert diluent, such as DMF, at a temperature ranging from about 24°C to about 37°C for about 0.5 to about 4 hours. This reaction is further described in Zuckermann et al., *J. Am. Chem. Soc.*, 1992, 114, 10646-10647. Preferred carboxylic acid derivatives for use in this reaction are α-chloro and α-bromocarboxylic acid esters such as *tert*-butyl bromoacetate and the like. When a carboxylic acid ester is employed in this reaction, the ester group is subsequently hydrolyzed using conventional procedures to afford an *N*-sulfonyl amino acid of formula IV.

The amide intermediates where Q is -C(O)NH- are then prepared by coupling the intermediate *N*-sulfonyl amino acid of formula IV with an amino acid derivative of formula VI:



wherein  $\text{R}^5$  and  $\text{R}^6$  are as defined herein. This coupling reaction is typically conducted using well-known coupling reagents such as carbodiimides, BOP reagent (benzotriazol-1-yloxy-tris(dimethylamino)phosphonium hexafluorophosphate) and the like. Suitable carbodiimides include, by way of example, dicyclohexylcarbodiimide (DCC), 1-(3-dimethylamino-propyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide (EDC) and the like. If desired, polymer supported forms of carbodiimide coupling reagents may also be used including, for example, those described in *Tetrahedron Letters*, 34(48), 7685 (1993). Additionally, well-known coupling promoters, such as *N*-hydroxysuccinimide, 1-hydroxybenzotriazole and the like, may be used to facilitate the coupling reaction.

This coupling reaction is typically conducted by contacting the *N*-sulfonylamino acid IV with about 1 to about 2 equivalents of the coupling reagent and at least one equivalent, preferably about 1 to about 1.2 equivalents, of amino acid derivative VI in an inert diluent, such as dichloromethane, chloroform, acetonitrile, tetrahydrofuran, *N,N*-dimethylformamide and the like. Generally, this reaction is conducted at a temperature ranging from about 0°C to about 37°C for about 12 to about 24 hours. Upon completion of the reaction, the amide is recovered by conventional methods including neutralization, extraction, precipitation, chromatography, filtration, and the like.

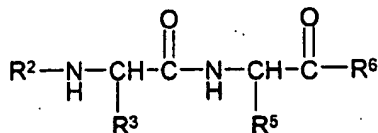
Alternatively, the *N*-sulfonyl amino acid IV can be converted into an acid halide and the acid halide coupled with amino acid derivative VI to provide an amide. The acid halide of VI can be prepared by contacting VI with an inorganic acid halide, such as thionyl chloride, phosphorous trichloride, phosphorous tribromide or phosphorous penta-chloride, or preferably, with oxalyl chloride under conventional conditions. Generally, this reaction is conducted using about 1 to 5 molar equivalents of the inorganic acid halide or oxalyl chloride, either neat or in an inert solvent, such as dichloromethane or carbon tetrachloride, at temperature in the range of about 0°C to about 80°C for about 1 to about 48 hours. A catalyst, such as DMF, may also be used in this reaction.

The acid halide of *N*-sulfonyl amino acid IV is then contacted with at least one equivalent, preferably about 1.1 to about 1.5 equivalents, of amino acid derivative VI in an inert diluent, such as dichloromethane, at a temperature ranging from about -70°C to about 40°C for about 1 to about 24 hours. Preferably, this reaction is conducted in the presence of a suitable base to scavenge the acid generated during the reaction. Suitable bases include, by way of example, tertiary amines, such as triethylamine, diisopropylethylamine, *N*-methylmorpholine and the like. Alternatively, the reaction can be conducted under Schotten-Baumann-type conditions using aqueous alkali, such as sodium hydroxide and the like. Upon completion of the reaction, the amide is recovered by conventional methods including neutralization, extraction, precipitation, chromatography, filtration, and the like.

Alternatively, the amide intermediates where Q is -C(O)NH- can be prepared by first forming a diamino acid derivative of formula VII:



-62-



VII

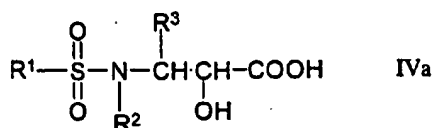
wherein R<sup>2</sup>, R<sup>3</sup>, R<sup>5</sup>, and R<sup>6</sup> are as defined herein. The diamino acid derivatives of formula VII can be readily prepared by coupling an amino acid of formula II with an amino acid derivative of formula VI using conventional amino acid coupling techniques and reagents, such as carbodiimides, BOP reagent and the like, as described above. Diamino acid VII can then be sulfonated using a sulfonyl chloride of formula III and using the synthetic procedures described above to provide an amide.

The amino acid derivatives of formula VI employed in the above reactions are either known compounds or compounds that can be prepared from known compounds by conventional synthetic procedures. For example, amino acid derivatives of formula VI can be prepared by C-alkylating commercially available diethyl 2-acetamidomalonate (Aldrich, Milwaukee, Wisconsin, USA) with an alkyl or substituted alkyl halide. This reaction is typically conducted by treating the diethyl 2-acetamidomalonate with at least one equivalent of sodium ethoxide and at least one equivalent of an alkyl or substituted alkyl halide in refluxing ethanol for about 6 to about 12 hours. The resulting C-alkylated malonate is then deacetylated, hydrolyzed and decarboxylated by heating in aqueous hydrochloric acid at reflux for about 6 to about 12 hours to provide the amino acid, typically as the hydrochloride salt.

Examples of amino acid derivatives of formula VI suitable for use in the above reactions include, but are not limited to, L-tyrosine methyl ester, L-3,5-diiodotyrosine methyl ester, L-3-iodotyrosine methyl ester, β-(4-hydroxy-naphth-1-yl)-L-alanine methyl ester, β-(6-hydroxy-naphth-2-yl)-L-

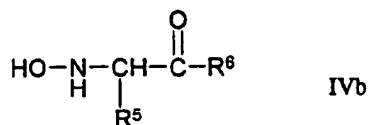
alanine methyl ester, and the like. If desired, of course, other esters or amides of the above-described compounds may also be employed.

In another preferred embodiment, the compounds of formula I/IA wherein Q is -CH(OH)C(O)NH- are readily prepared by coupling an  $\alpha$ -hydroxy carboxylic acid of formula IVa:



with an amino acid derivative of formula VI using the coupling reagents and procedures described above. The  $\alpha$ -hydroxy carboxylic acids of formula IVa are either commercially available or can be prepared from readily available starting materials using conventional reagents and reaction conditions well-known to those skilled in the art.

Additionally, in another preferred embodiment, the compounds of formula I/IA where Q is -C(O)N(O)- are readily prepared by coupling an *N*-sulfonyl amino acid of formula IV with an *N*-hydroxy amino acid of formula IVb:

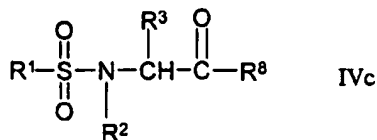


where  $\text{R}^5$  and  $\text{R}^6$  are as defined herein, using the coupling reagents and procedures described above. The *N*-hydroxy amino acids of formula IVb can be prepared from the corresponding amino acid derivative of formula IV, where  $\text{R}^6$  is OH, by reaction with sodium nitrite and potassium bromide in dilute aqueous sulfuric acid (typically 2.5 N), followed by treatment with

hydroxylamine. Typically, this reaction is conducted by first contacting a solution IV and excess potassium bromide in 2.5 N sulfuric acid with excess sodium nitrite at 0°C for about 0.25 to 0.5 hours and then at ambient temperature for 1 hour. The product is then esterified using thionyl chloride and methanol under standard conditions to form the methyl ester. The methyl ester is then immediately contacted with hydroxylamine in methanol and the reaction mixture is refluxed for 6 to 24 hours to afford the *N*-hydroxy amino acid of formula IVb.

In still another preferred embodiment, the compounds of formula I/IA where Q is -NHC(O)NH- are readily prepared by contacting an *N*-sulfonyl amino acid of formula IV with an equimolar amount of diphenylphosphoryl azide in an inert solvent, such as toluene, followed by treatment with a trialkylamine, such as triethylamine, to form the corresponding isocyanate. The intermediate isocyanate is generally not isolated, but is reacted *in situ* with an amino acid derivative of formula VI to afford the urea. This reaction is typically conducted at about 80°C for about 6 to about 24 hours to provide the urea.

In yet another preferred embodiment, the compounds of formula I/IA where Q is -CH(R<sup>8</sup>)NR<sup>7</sup>- are conveniently prepared by reductive alkylation of an amino acid derivative of formula VI using a carbonyl compound of formula IVc:



using conventional reductive alkylation reagents and conditions. Typically, this reaction is conducted by contacting the amino acid derivative VI with an

5 excess of IVc, preferably with 1.1 to 2 equivalents of IVc, and an excess,  
preferably 1.1 to 1.5 equivalents, of a reducing agent, such as sodium  
10 cyanoborohydride. Generally, this reaction is conducted in an essentially  
inert diluent, such as methanol, at a temperature ranging from about 0°C to  
5 about 50°C, preferably at ambient temperature, for about 0.5 to 3 hours to  
afford the desired product.

15 For ease of synthesis, the compounds of formula I are typically  
prepared as an ester, i.e., where R<sup>6</sup> is an alkoxy or substituted alkoxy group  
10 and the like. If desired, the ester group can be hydrolysed using  
conventional conditions and reagents to provide the corresponding  
carboxylic acid. Typically, this reaction is conducted by treating the ester  
25 with at least one equivalent of an alkali metal hydroxide, such as lithium,  
sodium or potassium hydroxide, in an inert diluent, such as methanol or  
15 mixtures of methanol and water, at a temperature ranging about 0°C to  
about 24°C for about 1 to about 12 hours. Alternatively, benzyl esters may  
30 be removed by hydrogenolysis using a palladium catalyst, such as palladium  
on carbon. The resulting carboxylic acids may be coupled, if desired, to  
amines such as β-alanine ethyl ester, hydroxyamines such as hydroxylamine  
20 and *N*-hydroxysuccinimide, alkoxyamines and substituted alkoxyamines such  
35 as *O*-methylhydroxylamine and *O*-benzylhydroxylamine, and the like, using  
conventional coupling reagents and conditions as described above.

40 As will be apparent to those skilled in the art, other functional groups  
25 present on any of the substituents of the compounds of formula I can be  
readily modified or derivatized either before or after the above-described  
coupling reactions using well-known synthetic procedures. For example, a  
45 nitro group present on a substituent of a compound of formula I or an  
intermediate thereof may be readily reduced by hydrogenation in the  
30 presence of a palladium catalyst, such as palladium on carbon, to provide the  
50 corresponding amino group. This reaction is typically conducted at a

5 temperature of from about 20°C to about 50°C for about 6 to about 24 hours  
in an inert diluent, such as methanol. Compounds having a nitro group on  
10 the R<sup>5</sup> substituent can be prepared, for example, by using a 4-  
nitrophenylalanine derivative and the like in the above-described coupling  
5 reactions.

15 Similarly, a pyridyl group can be hydrogenated in the presence of a  
platinum catalyst, such as platinum oxide, in an acidic diluent to provide the  
corresponding piperidinyl analogue. Generally, this reaction is conducted  
20 10 by treating the pyridine compound with hydrogen at a pressure ranging from  
about 20 psi to about 60 psi, preferably about 40 psi, in the presence of the  
catalyst at a temperature of about 20°C to about 50°C for about 2 to about  
24 hours in an acidic diluent, such as a mixture of methanol and aqueous  
25 hydrochloric acid. Compounds having a pyridyl group can be readily  
15 prepared by using, for example,  $\beta$ -(2-pyridyl)-,  $\beta$ -(3-pyridyl)- or  $\beta$ -(4-  
pyridyl)-L-alanine derivatives in the above-described coupling reactions.

30 Additionally, when the R<sup>5</sup> substituent of a compound of formula I or  
an intermediate thereof contains a primary or secondary amino group, such  
20 amino groups can be further derivatized either before or after the above  
35 coupling reactions to provide, by way of example, amides, sulfonamides,  
ureas, thioureas, carbamates, secondary or tertiary amines and the like.  
Compounds having a primary amino group on the R<sup>5</sup> substituent may be  
40 prepared, for example, by reduction of the corresponding nitro compound as  
25 described above. Alternatively, such compounds can be prepared by using  
an amino acid derivative of formula VI derived from lysine, 4-  
aminophenylalanine and the like in the above-described coupling reactions.

50 By way of illustration, a compound of formula I or an intermediate  
30 thereof having a substituent containing a primary or secondary amino group,  
such as where R<sup>5</sup> is a (4-aminophenyl)methyl group, can be readily *N*-

acylated using conventional acylating reagents and conditions to provide the corresponding amide. This acylation reaction is typically conducted by treating the amino compound with at least one equivalent, preferably about 1.1 to about 1.2 equivalents, of a carboxylic acid in the presence of a coupling reagent such as a carbodiimide, BOP reagent (benzotriazol-1-yloxy-tris(dimethylamino)phosphonium hexafluorophosphonate) and the like, in an inert diluent, such as dichloromethane, chloroform, acetonitrile, tetrahydrofuran, *N,N*-dimethylformamide and the like, at a temperature ranging from about 0°C to about 37°C for about 4 to about 24 hours. Preferably, a promoter, such as *N*-hydroxysuccinimide, 1-hydroxybenzotriazole and the like, is used to facilitate the acylation reaction. Examples of carboxylic acids suitable for use in this reaction include, but are not limited to, *N*-*tert*-butyloxycarbonylglycine, *N*-*tert*-butyloxycarbonyl-L-phenylalanine, *N*-*tert*-butyloxycarbonyl-L-aspartic acid benzyl ester, benzoic acid, *N*-*tert*-butyloxycarbonylisonipecotic acid, *N*-methylisonipecotic acid, *N*-*tert*-butyloxycarbonylnipecotic acid, *N*-*tert*-butyloxycarbonyl-L-tetrahydroisoquinoline-3-carboxylic acid, *N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-proline and the like.

Alternatively, a compound of formula I or an intermediate thereof containing a primary or secondary amino group can be *N*-acylated using an acyl halide or a carboxylic acid anhydride to form the corresponding amide. This reaction is typically conducted by contacting the amino compound with at least one equivalent, preferably about 1.1 to about 1.2 equivalents, of the acyl halide or carboxylic acid anhydride in an inert diluent, such as dichloromethane, at a temperature ranging from about -70°C to about 40°C for about 1 to about 24 hours. If desired, an acylation catalyst such as 4-(*N,N*-dimethylamino)pyridine may be used to promote the acylation reaction. The acylation reaction is preferably conducted in the presence of a suitable base to scavenge the acid generated during the reaction. Suitable bases include, by way of example, tertiary amines, such

as triethylamine, diisopropylethylamine, *N*-methylmorpholine and the like. Alternatively, the reaction can be conducted under Schotten-Baumann-type conditions using aqueous alkali, such as sodium hydroxide and the like.

Examples of acyl halides and carboxylic acid anhydrides suitable for use in this reaction include, but are not limited to, 2-methylpropionyl chloride, trimethylacetyl chloride, phenylacetyl chloride, benzoyl chloride, 2-bromobenzoyl chloride, 2-methylbenzoyl chloride, 2-trifluoromethylbenzoyl chloride, isonicotinoyl chloride, nicotinoyl chloride, picolinoyl chloride, acetic anhydride, succinic anhydride, and the like. Carbamyl chlorides, such as *N,N*-dimethylcarbamyl chloride, *N,N*-diethylcarbamyl chloride and the like, can also be used in this reaction to provide ureas. Similarly, dicarbonates, such as di-*tert*-butyl dicarbonate, may be employed to provide carbamates.

In a similar manner, a compound of formula I or an intermediate thereof containing a primary or secondary amino group may be *N*-sulfonated to form a sulfonamide using a sulfonyl halide or a sulfonic acid anhydride. Sulfonyl halides and sulfonic acid anhydrides suitable for use in this reaction include, but are not limited to, methanesulfonyl chloride, chloromethanesulfonyl chloride, *p*-toluenesulfonyl chloride, trifluoromethanesulfonic anhydride, and the like. Similarly, sulfamoyl chlorides, such as dimethylsulfamoyl chloride, can be used to provide sulfamides (e.g.,  $>N-SO_2-N<$ ).

Additionally, a primary and secondary amino group present on a substituent of a compound of formula I or an intermediate thereof can be reacted with an isocyanate or a thioisocyanate to give a urea or thiourea, respectively. This reaction is typically conducted by contacting the amino compound with at least one equivalent, preferably about 1.1 to about 1.2 equivalents, of the isocyanate or thioisocyanate in an inert diluent, such as

5  
10  
toluene and the like, at a temperature ranging from about 24°C to about 37°C for about 12 to about 24 hours. The isocyanates and thioisocyanates used in this reaction are commercially available or can be prepared from commercially available compounds using well-known synthetic procedures.

5  
15  
For example, isocyanates and thioisocyanates are readily prepared by reacting the appropriate amine with phosgene or thiophosgene. Examples of isocyanates and thioisocyanates suitable for use in this reaction include, but are not limited to, ethyl isocyanate, *n*-propyl isocyanate, 4-cyanophenyl isocyanate, 3-methoxyphenyl isocyanate, 2-phenylethyl isocyanate, methyl  
10  
thioisocyanate, ethyl thioisocyanate, 2-phenylethyl thioisocyanate, 3-phenylpropyl thioisocyanate, 3-(*N,N*-diethylamino)propyl thioisocyanate, phenyl thioisocyanate, benzyl thioisocyanate, 3-pyridyl thioisocyanate, fluorescein isothiocyanate (isomer I) and the like.

15  
Furthermore, when a compound of formula I or an intermediate thereof contains a primary or secondary amino group, the amino group can be reductively alkylated using aldehydes or ketones to form a secondary or tertiary amino group. This reaction is typically conducted by contacting the amino compound with at least one equivalent, preferably about 1.1 to about  
20  
1.5 equivalents, of an aldehyde or ketone and at least one equivalent based on the amino compound of a metal hydride reducing agent, such as sodium cyanoborohydride, in an inert diluent, such as methanol, tetrahydrofuran, mixtures thereof and the like, at a temperature ranging from about 0°C to  
35  
about 50°C for about 1 to about 72 hours. Aldehydes and ketones suitable  
40  
25  
for use in this reaction include, by way of example, benzaldehyde, 4-chlorobenzaldehyde, valeraldehyde and the like.

45  
In a similar manner, when a compound of formula I or an intermediate thereof has a substituent containing a hydroxyl group, the  
30  
hydroxyl group can be further modified or derivatized either before or after the above coupling reactions to provide, by way of example, ethers,  
50  
55



carbamates and the like. Compounds having a hydroxyl group on the R<sup>5</sup> substituent, for example, can be prepared using an amino acid derivative of formula VI derived from tyrosine and the like in the above-described reactions.

5

By way of example, a compound of formula I or an intermediate thereof having a substituent containing a hydroxyl group, such as where R<sup>5</sup> is a (4-hydroxyphenyl)methyl group, can be readily *O*-alkylated to form ethers. This *O*-alkylation reaction is typically conducted by contacting the hydroxy compound with a suitable alkali or alkaline earth metal base, such as potassium carbonate, in an inert diluent, such as acetone, 2-butanone and the like, to form the alkali or alkaline earth metal salt of the hydroxyl group. This salt is generally not isolated, but is reacted *in situ* with at least one equivalent of an alkyl or substituted alkyl halide or sulfonate, such as an alkyl chloride, bromide, iodide, mesylate or tosylate, to afford the ether. Generally, this reaction is conducted at a temperature ranging from about 60°C to about 150°C for about 24 to about 72 hours. Preferably, a catalytic amount of sodium or potassium iodide is added to the reaction mixture when an alkyl chloride or bromide is employed in the reaction.

10  
15  
20  
25  
30  
35

Examples of alkyl or substituted alkyl halides and sulfonates suitable for use in this reaction include, but are not limited to, *tert*-butyl bromoacetate, *N-tert*-butyl chloroacetamide, 1-bromoethylbenzene, ethyl  $\alpha$ -bromophenylacetate, 2-(*N*-ethyl-*N*-phenylamino)ethyl chloride, 2-(*N,N*-ethylamino)ethyl chloride, 2-(*N,N*-diisopropylamino)ethyl chloride, 2-(*N,N*-dibenzylamino)ethyl chloride, 3-(*N,N*-ethylamino)propyl chloride, 3-(*N*-benzyl-*N*-methylamino)propyl chloride, *N*-(2-chloroethyl)morpholine, 2-(hexamethyleneimino)ethyl chloride, 3-(*N*-methylpiperazine)propyl chloride, 1-(3-chlorophenyl)-4-(3-chloropropyl)piperazine, 2-(4-hydroxy-4-phenylpiperidine)ethyl chloride, *N-tert*-butyloxycarbonyl-3-piperidinemethyl tosylate, and the like.

40  
45  
50  
55

Alternatively, a hydroxyl group present on a substituent of a compound of formula I or an intermediate thereof can be *O*-alkylating using the Mitsunobu reaction. In this reaction, an alcohol, such as 3-(*N,N*-dimethylamino)-1-propanol and the like, is reacted with about 1.0 to about 1.3 equivalents of triphenylphosphine and about 1.0 to about 1.3 equivalents of diethyl azodicarboxylate in an inert diluent, such as tetrahydrofuran, at a temperature ranging from about -10°C to about 5°C for about 0.25 to about 1 hour. About 1.0 to about 1.3 equivalents of a hydroxy compound, such as *N*-*tert*-butyltyrosine methyl ester, is then added and the reaction mixture is stirred at a temperature of about 0°C to about 30°C for about 2 to about 48 hours to provide the *O*-alkylated product.

In a similar manner, a compound of formula I or an intermediate thereof containing a aryl hydroxy group can be reacted with an aryl iodide to provide a diaryl ether. Generally, this reaction is conducted by forming the alkali metal salt of the hydroxyl group using a suitable base, such as sodium hydride, in an inert diluent such as xylenes at a temperature of about -25°C to about 10°C. The salt is then treated with about 1.1 to about 1.5 equivalents of cuprous bromide dimethyl sulfide complex at a temperature ranging from about 10°C to about 30°C for about 0.5 to about 2.0 hours, followed by about 1.1 to about 1.5 equivalents of an aryl iodide, such as sodium 2-iodobenzoate and the like. The reaction is then heated to about 70°C to about 150°C for about 2 to about 24 hours to provide the diaryl ether.

Additionally, a hydroxy-containing compound can also be readily derivatized to form a carbamate. In one method for preparing such carbamates, a hydroxy compound of formula I or an intermediate thereof is contacted with about 1.0 to about 1.2 equivalents of 4-nitrophenyl chloroformate in an inert diluent, such as dichloromethane, at a temperature ranging from about -25°C to about 0°C for about 0.5 to about 2.0 hours.

5 Treatment of the resulting carbonate with an excess, preferably about 2 to  
about 5 equivalents, of a trialkylamine, such as triethylamine, for about 0.5  
10 to 2 hours, followed by about 1.0 to about 1.5 equivalents of a primary or  
secondary amine provides the carbamate. Examples of amines suitable for  
5 using in this reaction include, but are not limited to, piperazine, 1-  
methylpiperazine, 1-acetylpiperazine, morpholine, thiomorpholine,  
15 pyrrolidine, piperidine and the like.

Alternatively, in another method for preparing carbamates, a  
20 hydroxy-containing compound is contacted with about 1.0 to about 1.5  
equivalents of a carbamyl chloride in an inert diluent, such as  
dichloromethane, at a temperature ranging from about 25°C to about 70°C  
25 for about 2 to about 72 hours. Typically, this reaction is conducted in the  
presence of a suitable base to scavenge the acid generated during the  
15 reaction. Suitable bases include, by way of example, tertiary amines, such  
as triethylamine, diisopropylethylamine, *N*-methyldmorpholine and the like.  
30 Additionally, at least one equivalent (based on the hydroxy compound) of 4-  
(*N,N*-dimethylamino)pyridine is preferably added to the reaction mixture to  
facilitate the reaction. Examples of carbamyl chlorides suitable for use in  
20 this reaction include, by way of example, dimethylcarbamyl chloride,  
35 diethylcarbamyl chloride and the like.

Likewise, when a compound of formula I or an intermediate thereof  
40 contains a primary or secondary hydroxyl group, such hydroxyl groups can  
25 be readily converted into a leaving group and displaced to form, for  
example, amines, sulfides and fluorides. For example, derivatives of 4-  
hydroxy-L-proline can be converted into the corresponding 4-amino, 4-thio  
45 or 4-fluoro-L-proline derivatives via nucleophilic displacement of the  
derivatized hydroxyl group. Generally, when a chiral compound is  
30 employed in these reactions, the stereochemistry at the carbon atom attached  
50 to the derivatized hydroxyl group is typically inverted.

5  
10  
15  
20  
25  
These reactions are typically conducted by first converting the hydroxyl group into a leaving group, such as a tosylate, by treatment of the hydroxy compound with at least one equivalent of a sulfonyl halide, such as *p*-toluenesulfonyl chloride and the like, in pyridine. This reaction is generally conducted at a temperature of from about 0°C to about 70°C for about 1 to about 48 hours. The resulting tosylate can then be readily displaced with sodium azide, for example, by contacting the tosylate with at least one equivalent of sodium azide in an inert diluent, such as a mixture of *N,N*-dimethylformamide and water, at a temperature ranging from about 0°C to about 37°C for about 1 to about 12 hours to provide the corresponding azido compound. The azido group can then be reduced by, for example, hydrogenation using a palladium on carbon catalyst to provide the amino (-NH<sub>2</sub>) compound.

15  
20  
25  
30  
35  
40  
Similarly, a tosylate group can be readily displaced by a thiol to form a sulfide. This reaction is typically conducted by contacting the tosylate with at least one equivalent of a thiol, such as thiophenol, in the presence of a suitable base, such as 1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene (DBU), in an inert diluent, such as *N,N*-dimethylformamide, at a temperature of from about 0°C to about 37°C for about 1 to about 12 hours to provide the sulfide. Additionally, treatment of a tosylate with morpholiniosulfur trifluoride in an inert diluent, such as dichloromethane, at a temperature ranging from about 0°C to about 37°C for about 12 to about 24 hours affords the corresponding fluoro compound.

25  
30  
35  
40  
45  
50  
55  
Furthermore, a compound of formula I or an intermediate thereof having a substituent containing an iodoaryl group, for example, when R<sup>5</sup> is a (4-iodophenyl)methyl group, can be readily converted either before or after the above coupling reactions into a biaryl compound. Typically, this reaction is conducted by treating the iodoaryl compound with about 1.1 to about 2 equivalents of an arylzinc iodide, such as 2-

(methoxycarbonyl)phenylzinc iodide, in the presence of a palladium catalyst, such as palladium tetra(triphenylphosphine), in an inert diluent, such as tetrahydrofuran, at a temperature ranging from about 24°C to about 30°C until reaction completion. This reaction is further described, for example, in Rieke, *J. Org. Chem.* **1991**, *56*, 1445.

In some cases, the compounds of formula I or intermediates thereof may contain substituents having one or more sulfur atoms. Such sulfur atoms will be present, for example, when the amino acid of formula II employed in the above reactions is derived from L-thiazolidine-4-carboxylic acid, L-(5,5-dimethyl)thiazolidine-4-carboxylic acid, L-thiamorpholine-3-carboxylic acid and the like. When present, such sulfur atoms can be oxidized either before or after the above coupling reactions to provide a sulfoxide or sulfone compound using conventional reagents and reaction conditions. Suitable reagents for oxidizing a sulfide compound to a sulfoxide include, by way of example, hydrogen peroxide, 3-chloroperoxybenzoic acid (MCPBA), sodium periodate and the like. The oxidation reaction is typically conducted by contacting the sulfide compound with about 0.95 to about 1.1 equivalents of the oxidizing reagent in an inert diluent, such as dichloromethane, at a temperature ranging from about -50°C to about 75°C for about 1 to about 24 hours. The resulting sulfoxide can then be further oxidized to the corresponding sulfone by contacting the sulfoxide with at least one additional equivalent of an oxidizing reagent, such as hydrogen peroxide, MCPBA, potassium permanganate and the like. Alternatively, the sulfone can be prepared directly by contacting the sulfide with at least two equivalents, and preferably an excess, of the oxidizing reagent. Such reactions are described further in March, "*Advanced Organic Chemistry*", 4th Ed., pp. 1201-1202, Wiley Publisher, 1992.

As described above, the compounds of formula I having an R<sup>2</sup> substituent other than a hydrogen can be prepared using an N-substituted amino

acid of formula II, such as sarcosine, *N*-methyl-L-phenylalanine and the like, in the above-described coupling reactions. Alternatively, such compounds can be prepared by *N*-alkylation of a sulfonamide of formula I or IV (where  $R^2$  is hydrogen) using conventional synthetic procedures. Typically, this *N*-alkylation reaction is conducted by contacting the sulfonamide with at least one equivalent, preferably 1.1 to 2 equivalents, of an alkyl or substituted alkyl halide in the presence of a suitable base, such as potassium carbonate, in an inert diluent, such as acetone, 2-butanone and the like, at a temperature ranging from about 25°C to about 70°C for about 2 to about 48 hours. Examples of alkyl or substituted alkyl halides suitable for use in this reaction include, but are not limited to, methyl iodide, and the like.

Additionally, the sulfonamides of formula I or IV wherein  $R^2$  is hydrogen and  $R^1$  is a 2-alkoxycarbonylaryl group can be intramolecularly cyclized to form 1,2-benzisothiazol-3-one derivatives or analogues thereof. This reaction is typically conducted by treating a sulfonamide, such as *N*-(2-methoxycarbonylphenylsulfonyl)glycine-L-phenylalanine benzyl ester, with about 1.0 to 1.5 equivalents of a suitable base, such as an alkali metal hydride, in an inert diluent, such as tetrahydrofuran, at a temperature ranging from about 0°C to about 30°C for about 2 to about 48 hours to afford the cyclized 1,2-benzisothiazol-3-one derivative.

Lastly, the compounds of formula I where Q contains a thiocarbonyl group, (C=S) can be prepared by using an amino thionoacid derivative in place of amino acid II in the above described synthetic procedures. Such amino thionoacid derivatives can be prepared by the procedures described in Shalaky, et al., *J. Org. Chem.*, **61**:9045-9048 (1996) and Brain, et al., *J. Org. Chem.*, **62**:3808-3809 (1997) and references cited therein.

#### Pharmaceutical Formulations

When employed as pharmaceuticals, the compounds of formula I and IA are usually administered in the form of pharmaceutical compositions. These compounds can be administered by a variety of routes including oral, rectal, transdermal, subcutaneous, intravenous, intramuscular, and intranasal. These compounds are effective as both injectable and oral compositions. Such compositions are prepared in a manner well known in the pharmaceutical art and comprise at least one active compound.

This invention also includes pharmaceutical compositions which contain, as the active ingredient, one or more of the compounds of formula I and IA above associated with pharmaceutically acceptable carriers. In making the compositions of this invention, the active ingredient is usually mixed with an excipient, diluted by an excipient or enclosed within such a carrier which can be in the form of a capsule, sachet, paper or other container. When the excipient serves as a diluent, it can be a solid, semi-solid, or liquid material, which acts as a vehicle, carrier or medium for the active ingredient. Thus, the compositions can be in the form of tablets, pills, powders, lozenges, sachets, cachets, elixirs, suspensions, emulsions, solutions, syrups, aerosols (as a solid or in a liquid medium), ointments containing, for example, up to 10% by weight of the active compound, soft and hard gelatin capsules, suppositories, sterile injectable solutions, and sterile packaged powders.

In preparing a formulation, it may be necessary to mill the active compound to provide the appropriate particle size prior to combining with the other ingredients. If the active compound is substantially insoluble, it ordinarily is milled to a particle size of less than 200 mesh. If the active compound is substantially water soluble, the particle size is normally adjusted by milling to provide a substantially uniform distribution in the formulation, e.g. about 40 mesh.

5  
10  
15  
20  
25  
30  
35  
40  
45  
50  
55

Some examples of suitable excipients include lactose, dextrose, sucrose, sorbitol, mannitol, starches, gum acacia, calcium phosphate, alginates, tragacanth, gelatin, calcium silicate, microcrystalline cellulose, polyvinylpyrrolidone, cellulose, water, syrup, and methyl cellulose. The formulations can additionally include: lubricating agents such as talc, magnesium stearate, and mineral oil; wetting agents; emulsifying and suspending agents; preserving agents such as methyl- and propylhydroxybenzoates; sweetening agents; and flavoring agents. The compositions of the invention can be formulated so as to provide quick, sustained or delayed release of the active ingredient after administration to the patient by employing procedures known in the art.

25  
30  
35  
40  
45  
50  
55

The compositions are preferably formulated in a unit dosage form, each dosage containing from about 5 to about 100 mg, more usually about 10 to about 30 mg, of the active ingredient. The term "unit dosage forms" refers to physically discrete units suitable as unitary dosages for human subjects and other mammals, each unit containing a predetermined quantity of active material calculated to produce the desired therapeutic effect, in association with a suitable pharmaceutical excipient.

35  
40  
45  
50  
55

The active compound is effective over a wide dosage range and is generally administered in a pharmaceutically effective amount. It, will be understood, however, that the amount of the compound actually administered will be determined by a physician, in the light of the relevant circumstances, including the condition to be treated, the chosen route of administration, the actual compound administered, the age, weight, and response of the individual patient, the severity of the patient's symptoms, and the like.

30  
35  
40  
45  
50  
55

For preparing solid compositions such as tablets, the principal active ingredient is mixed with a pharmaceutical excipient to form a solid



5 preformulation composition containing a homogeneous mixture of a  
compound of the present invention. When referring to these preformulation  
10 compositions as homogeneous, it is meant that the active ingredient is  
dispersed evenly throughout the composition so that the composition may be  
5 readily subdivided into equally effective unit dosage forms such as tablets,  
pills and capsules. This solid preformulation is then subdivided into unit  
15 dosage forms of the type described above containing from, for example, 0.1  
to about 500 mg of the active ingredient of the present invention.

20 10 The tablets or pills of the present invention may be coated or  
otherwise compounded to provide a dosage form affording the advantage of  
prolonged action. For example, the tablet or pill can comprise an inner  
dosage and an outer dosage component, the latter being in the form of an  
25 envelope over the former. The two components can be separated by an  
15 enteric layer which serves to resist disintegration in the stomach and permit  
the inner component to pass intact into the duodenum or to be delayed in  
release. A variety of materials can be used for such enteric layers or  
30 coatings, such materials including a number of polymeric acids and mixtures  
of polymeric acids with such materials as shellac, cetyl alcohol, and  
20 cellulose acetate.

35 The liquid forms in which the novel compositions of the present  
invention may be incorporated for administration orally or by injection  
40 include aqueous solutions suitably flavored syrups, aqueous or oil  
25 suspensions, and flavored emulsions with edible oils such as cottonseed oil,  
sesame oil, coconut oil, or peanut oil, as well as elixirs and similar  
pharmaceutical vehicles.

50 30 Compositions for inhalation or insufflation include solutions and  
suspensions in pharmaceutically acceptable, aqueous or organic solvents, or  
mixtures thereof, and powders. The liquid or solid compositions may

5 contain suitable pharmaceutically acceptable excipients as described *supra*.  
10 Preferably the compositions are administered by the oral or nasal respiratory route for local or systemic effect. Compositions in preferably  
pharmaceutically acceptable solvents may be nebulized by use of inert gases.  
5 Nebulized solutions may be breathed directly from the nebulizing device or the nebulizing device may be attached to a face masks tent, or intermittent  
15 positive pressure breathing machine. Solution, suspension, or powder compositions may be administered, preferably orally or nasally, from  
devices which deliver the formulation in an appropriate manner.

10 The following formulation examples illustrate the pharmaceutical compositions of the present invention.

#### 25 Formulation Example 1

15 Hard gelatin capsules containing the following ingredients are prepared:

	<u>Ingredient</u>	<u>Quantity (mg/capsule)</u>
20	Active Ingredient	30.0
	Starch	305.0
35	Magnesium stearate	5.0

25 The above ingredients are mixed and filled into hard gelatin capsules in 340 mg quantities.

#### 40 Formulation Example 2

A tablet formula is prepared using the ingredients below:

	<u>Ingredient</u>	<u>Quantity (mg/tablet)</u>
30	Active Ingredient	25.0
	Cellulose, microcrystalline	200.0
	Colloidal silicon dioxide	10.0
35	Stearic acid	5.0

The components are blended and compressed to form tablets, each weighing 240 mg.

### Formulation Example 3

A dry powder inhaler formulation is prepared containing the following components:

<u>Ingredient</u>	<u>Weight %</u>
Active Ingredient	5
Lactose	95

The active mixture is mixed with the lactose and the mixture is added to a dry powder inhaling appliance.

### Formulation Example 4

Tablets, each containing 30 mg of active ingredient, are prepared as follows:

<u>Ingredient</u>	<u>Quantity (mg/tablet)</u>
Active Ingredient	30.0 mg
Starch	45.0 mg
Microcrystalline cellulose	35.0 mg
Polyvinylpyrrolidone (as 10% solution in water)	4.0 mg
Sodium carboxymethyl starch	4.5 mg
Magnesium stearate	0.5 mg
Talc	<u>1.0 mg</u>
Total	120 mg

The active ingredient, starch and cellulose are passed through a No. 20 mesh U.S. sieve and mixed thoroughly. The solution of polyvinylpyrrolidone is mixed with the resultant powders, which are then passed

through a 16 mesh U.S. sieve. The granules so produced are dried at 50° to 60°C and passed through a 16 mesh U.S. sieve. The sodium carboxymethyl starch, magnesium stearate, and talc, previously passed through a No. 30 mesh U.S. sieve, are then added to the granules which, after mixing, are compressed on a tablet machine to yield tablets each weighing 150 mg.

#### Formulation Example 5

Capsules, each containing 40 mg of medicament are made as follows:

10	<u>Ingredient</u>	<u>Quantity</u> <u>(mg/capsule)</u>
	Active Ingredient	40.0 mg
	Starch	109.0 mg
	Magnesium stearate	<u>1.0 mg</u>
15	Total	150.0 mg

The active ingredient, cellulose, starch, and magnesium stearate are blended, passed through a No. 20 mesh U.S. sieve, and filled into hard gelatin capsules in 150 mg quantities.

#### Formulation Example 6

Suppositories, each containing 25 mg of active ingredient are made as follows:

	<u>Ingredient</u>	<u>Amount</u>
	Active Ingredient	25 mg
30	Saturated fatty acid glycerides to	2,000 mg

The active ingredient is passed through a No. 60 mesh U.S. sieve and suspended in the saturated fatty acid glycerides previously melted using the minimum heat necessary. The mixture is then poured into a suppository mold of nominal 2.0 g capacity and allowed to cool.

Formulation Example 7

Suspensions, each containing 50 mg of medicament per 5.0 ml dose are made as follows:

5

	<u>Ingredient</u>	<u>Amount</u>
10	Active Ingredient	50.0 mg
	Xanthan gum	4.0 mg
20	Sodium carboxymethyl cellulose (11 %)	
	Microcrystalline cellulose (89%)	50.0 mg
15	Sucrose	1.75 g
	Sodium benzoate	10.0 mg
	Flavor and Color	q.v.
25	Purified water to	5.0 ml

The medicament, sucrose and xanthan gum are blended, passed through a No. 10 mesh U.S. sieve, and then mixed with a previously made solution of the microcrystalline cellulose and sodium carboxymethyl cellulose in water. The sodium benzoate, flavor, and color are diluted with some of the water and added with stirring. Sufficient water is then added to produce the required volume.

Formulation Example 8

	<u>Ingredient</u>	<u>Quantity (mg/capsule)</u>
40	30	
	Active Ingredient	15.0 mg
	Starch	407.0 mg
	Magnesium stearate	3.0 mg
45	35	
	Total	425.0 mg

The active ingredient, cellulose, starch, and magnesium stearate are blended, passed through a No. 20 mesh U.S. sieve, and filled into hard gelatin capsules in 560 mg quantities.

Formulation Example 9

An intravenous formulation may be prepared as follows:

<u>Ingredient</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
Active Ingredient	250.0 mg
Isotonic saline	1000 ml

Formulation Example 10

A topical formulation may be prepared as follows:

<u>Ingredient</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
Active Ingredient	1-10 g
Emulsifying Wax	30 g
Liquid Paraffin	20 g
White Soft Paraffin	to 100 g

The white soft paraffin is heated until molten. The liquid paraffin and emulsifying wax are incorporated and stirred until dissolved. The active ingredient is added and stirring is continued until dispersed. The mixture is then cooled until solid.

Another preferred formulation employed in the methods of the present invention employs transdermal delivery devices ("patches"). Such transdermal patches may be used to provide continuous or discontinuous infusion of the compounds of the present invention in controlled amounts. The construction and use of transdermal patches for the delivery of pharmaceutical agents is well known in the art. *See, e.g.*, U.S. Patent 5,023,252, issued June 11, 1991, herein incorporated by reference. Such patches may be constructed for continuous, pulsatile, or on demand delivery of pharmaceutical agents.

Direct or indirect placement techniques may be used when it is desirable or necessary to introduce the pharmaceutical composition to the brain.

Direct techniques usually involve placement of a drug delivery catheter into

the host's ventricular system to bypass the blood-brain barrier. One such implantable delivery system used for the transport of biological factors to specific anatomical regions of the body is described in U.S. Patent 5,011,472 which is herein incorporated by reference.

Indirect techniques, which are generally preferred, usually involve formulating the compositions to provide for drug latentiation by the conversion of hydrophilic drugs into lipid-soluble drugs. Latentiation is generally achieved through blocking of the hydroxy, carbonyl, sulfate, and primary amine groups present on the drug to render the drug more lipid soluble and amenable to transportation across the blood-brain barrier. Alternatively, the delivery of hydrophilic drugs may be enhanced by intra-arterial infusion of hypertonic solutions which can transiently open the blood-brain barrier.

#### Utility

The compounds of this invention can be employed to bind VLA-4 ( $\alpha_4\beta_1$  integrin) in biological samples and, accordingly have utility in, for example, assaying such samples for VLA-4. In such assays, the compounds can be bound to a solid support and the VLA-4 sample added thereto. The amount of VLA-4 in the sample can be determined by conventional methods such as use of a sandwich ELISA assay. Alternatively, labeled VLA-4 can be used in a competitive assay to measure for the presence of VLA-4 in the sample. Other suitable assays are well known in the art.

In addition, certain of the compounds of this invention inhibit, *in vivo*, adhesion of leukocytes to endothelial cells mediated by VLA-4 and, accordingly, can be used in the treatment of diseases mediated by VLA-4. Such diseases include inflammatory diseases in mammalian patients such as asthma, Alzheimer's disease, atherosclerosis, AIDS dementia, diabetes (including acute juvenile onset diabetes), inflammatory bowel

5 disease (including ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease), multiple sclerosis,  
rheumatoid arthritis, tissue transplantation, tumor metastasis, meningitis,  
10 encephalitis, stroke, and other cerebral traumas, nephritis, retinitis, atopic  
dermatitis, psoriasis, myocardial ischemia and acute leukocyte-mediated lung  
5 injury such as that which occurs in adult respiratory distress syndrome.

15 The biological activity of the compounds identified above may be  
assayed in a variety of systems. For example, a compound can be  
immobilized on a solid surface and adhesion of cells expressing VLA-4 can  
20 be measured. Using such formats, large numbers of compounds can be  
screened. Cells suitable for this assay include any leukocytes known to  
express VLA-4 such as T cells, B cells, monocytes, eosinophils, and  
basophils. A number of leukocyte cell lines can also be used, examples  
25 include Jurkat and U937.

15 The test compounds can also be tested for the ability to competitively  
inhibit binding between VLA-4 and VCAM-1, or between VLA-4 and a  
30 labeled compound known to bind VLA-4 such as a compound of this  
invention or antibodies to VLA-4. In these assays, the VCAM-1 can be  
20 immobilized on a solid surface. VCAM-1 may also be expressed as a  
35 recombinant fusion protein having an Ig tail (e.g., IgG) so that binding to  
VLA-4 may be detected in an immunoassay. Alternatively, VCAM-1  
expressing cells, such as activated endothelial cells or VCAM-1 transfected  
40 fibroblasts can be used. For assays to measure the ability to block adhesion  
25 to brain endothelial cells, the assays described in International Patent  
Application Publication No. WO 91/05038 are particularly preferred. This  
application is incorporated herein by reference in its entirety.

30 Many assay formats employ labelled assay components. The labelling  
systems can be in a variety of forms. The label may be coupled directly or  
50 indirectly to the desired component of the assay according to methods well



known in the art. A wide variety of labels may be used. The component may be labelled by any one of several methods. The most common method of detection is the use of autoradiography with  $^3\text{H}$ ,  $^{125}\text{I}$ ,  $^{35}\text{S}$ ,  $^{14}\text{C}$ , or  $^{32}\text{P}$  labelled compounds or the like. Non-radioactive labels include ligands which bind to labelled antibodies, fluorophores, chemiluminescent agents, enzymes and antibodies which can serve as specific binding pair members for a labelled ligand. The choice of label depends on sensitivity required, ease of conjugation with the compound, stability requirements, and available instrumentation.

Appropriate *in vivo* models for demonstrating efficacy in treating inflammatory responses include EAE (experimental autoimmune encephalomyelitis) in mice, rats, guinea pigs or primates, as well as other inflammatory models dependent upon  $\alpha 4$  integrins.

Compounds having the desired biological activity may be modified as necessary to provide desired properties such as improved pharmacological properties (e.g., *in vivo* stability, bio-availability), or the ability to be detected in diagnostic applications. For instance, inclusion of one or more D-amino acids in the sulfonamides of this invention typically increases *in vivo* stability. Stability can be assayed in a variety of ways such as by measuring the half-life of the proteins during incubation with peptidases or human plasma or serum. A number of such protein stability assays have been described (see, e.g., Verhoef et al., Eur. J. Drug Metab. Pharmacokinet., 1990, 15(2):83-93).

For diagnostic purposes, a wide variety of labels may be linked to the compounds, which may provide, directly or indirectly, a detectable signal. Thus, the compounds of the subject invention may be modified in a variety of ways for a variety of end purposes while still retaining biological activity.

In addition, various reactive sites may be introduced at the terminus for linking to particles, solid substrates, macromolecules, or the like.

Labeled compounds can be used in a variety of *in vivo* or *in vitro* applications. A wide variety of labels may be employed, such as radionuclides (e.g., gamma-emitting radioisotopes such as technetium-99 or indium-111), fluorescers (e.g., fluorescein), enzymes, enzyme substrates, enzyme cofactors, enzyme inhibitors, chemiluminescent compounds, bioluminescent compounds, and the like. Those of ordinary skill in the art will know of other suitable labels for binding to the complexes, or will be able to ascertain such using routine experimentation. The binding of these labels is achieved using standard techniques common to those of ordinary skill in the art.

*In vitro* uses include diagnostic applications such as monitoring inflammatory responses by detecting the presence of leukocytes expressing VLA-4. The compounds of this invention can also be used for isolating or labeling such cells. In addition, as mentioned above, the compounds of the invention can be used to assay for potential inhibitors of VLA-4/VCAM-1 interactions.

For *in vivo* diagnostic imaging to identify, e.g., sites of inflammation, radioisotopes are typically used in accordance with well known techniques. The radioisotopes may be bound to the peptide either directly or indirectly using intermediate functional groups. For instance, chelating agents such as diethylenetriaminepentacetic acid (DTPA) and ethylenediaminetetraacetic acid (EDTA) and similar molecules have been used to bind proteins to metallic ion radioisotopes.

The complexes can also be labeled with a paramagnetic isotope for purposes of *in vivo* diagnosis, as in magnetic resonance imaging (MRI) or

electron spin resonance (ESR), both of which are well known. In general, any conventional method for visualizing diagnostic imaging can be used. Usually gamma- and positron-emitting radioisotopes are used for camera imaging and paramagnetic isotopes are used for MRI. Thus, the compounds can be used to monitor the course of amelioration of an inflammatory response in an individual. By measuring the increase or decrease in lymphocytes expressing VLA-4 it is possible to determine whether a particular therapeutic regimen aimed at ameliorating the disease is effective.

The pharmaceutical compositions of the present invention can be used to block or inhibit cellular adhesion associated with a number of diseases and disorders. For instance, a number of inflammatory disorders are associated with integrins or leukocytes. Treatable disorders include, e.g., transplantation rejection (e.g., allograft rejection), Alzheimer's disease, atherosclerosis, AIDS dementia, diabetes (including acute juvenile onset diabetes), retinitis, cancer metastases, rheumatoid arthritis, acute leukocyte-mediated lung injury (e.g., adult respiratory distress syndrome), asthma, nephritis, and acute and chronic inflammation, including atopic dermatitis, psoriasis, myocardial ischemia, and inflammatory bowel disease (including Crohn's disease and ulcerative colitis). In preferred embodiments the pharmaceutical compositions are used to treat inflammatory brain disorders, such as multiple sclerosis (MS), viral meningitis and encephalitis.

Inflammatory bowel disease is a collective term for two similar diseases referred to as Crohn's disease and ulcerative colitis. Crohn's disease is an idiopathic, chronic ulceroconstrictive inflammatory disease characterized by sharply delimited and typically transmural involvement of all layers of the bowel wall by a granulomatous inflammatory reaction. Any segment of the gastrointestinal tract, from the mouth to the anus, may be involved, although the disease most commonly affects the terminal ileum and/or colon. Ulcerative colitis is an inflammatory response limited largely to the colonic

5 mucosa and submucosa. Lymphocytes and macrophages are numerous in  
10 lesions of inflammatory bowel disease and may contribute to inflammatory  
injury.

5 Asthma is a disease characterized by increased responsiveness of the  
tracheobronchial tree to various stimuli potentiating paroxysmal constriction  
15 of the bronchial airways. The stimuli cause release of various mediators of  
inflammation from IgE-coated mast cells including histamine, eosinophilic  
and neutrophilic chemotactic factors, leukotrienes, prostaglandin and platelet  
20 activating factor. Release of these factors recruits basophils, eosinophils and  
neutrophils, which cause inflammatory injury.

25 Atherosclerosis is a disease of arteries (e.g., coronary, carotid, aorta  
and iliac). The basic lesion, the atheroma, consists of a raised focal plaque  
15 within the intima, having a core of lipid and a covering fibrous cap.  
Atheromas compromise arterial blood flow and weaken affected arteries.  
30 Myocardial and cerebral infarcts are a major consequence of this disease.  
Macrophages and leukocytes are recruited to atheromas and contribute to  
inflammatory injury.

20 Rheumatoid arthritis is a chronic, relapsing inflammatory disease that  
primarily causes impairment and destruction of joints. Rheumatoid arthritis  
usually first affects the small joints of the hands and feet but then may  
40 involve the wrists, elbows, ankles and knees. The arthritis results from  
interaction of synovial cells with leukocytes that infiltrate from the  
25 circulation into the synovial lining of the joints. See e.g., Paul, *Immunology*  
(3d ed., Raven Press, 1993).

30 Another indication for the compounds of this invention is in treatment of  
organ or graft rejection mediated by VLA-4. Over recent years there has  
50 been a considerable improvement in the efficiency of surgical techniques for

transplanting tissues and organs such as skin, kidney, liver, heart, lung, pancreas and bone marrow. Perhaps the principal outstanding problem is the lack of satisfactory agents for inducing immunotolerance in the recipient to the transplanted allograft or organ. When allogeneic cells or organs are transplanted into a host (i.e., the donor and donee are different individuals from the same species), the host immune system is likely to mount an immune response to foreign antigens in the transplant (host-versus-graft disease) leading to destruction of the transplanted tissue. CD8<sup>+</sup> cells, CD4 cells and monocytes are all involved in the rejection of transplant tissues. Compounds of this invention which bind to alpha-4 integrin are useful, *inter alia*, to block alloantigen-induced immune responses in the donee thereby preventing such cells from participating in the destruction of the transplanted tissue or organ. See, e.g., Paul et al., *Transplant International* 9, 420-425 (1996); Georczynski et al., *Immunology* 87, 573-580 (1996); Georczynski et al., *Transplant. Immunol.* 3, 55-61 (1995); Yang et al., *Transplantation* 60, 71-76 (1995); Anderson et al., *APMIS* 102, 23-27 (1994).

A related use for compounds of this invention which bind to VLA-4 is in modulating the immune response involved in "graft versus host" disease (GVHD). See e.g., Schlegel et al., *J. Immunol.* 155, 3856-3865 (1995). GVHD is a potentially fatal disease that occurs when immunologically competent cells are transferred to an allogeneic recipient. In this situation, the donor's immunocompetent cells may attack tissues in the recipient. Tissues of the skin, gut epithelia and liver are frequent targets and may be destroyed during the course of GVHD. The disease presents an especially severe problem when immune tissue is being transplanted, such as in bone marrow transplantation; but less severe GVHD has also been reported in other cases as well, including heart and liver transplants. The therapeutic agents of the present invention are used, *inter alia*, to block activation of the donor T-cells thereby interfering with their ability to lyse target cells in the host.

5 A further use of the compounds of this invention is inhibiting tumor  
metastasis. Several tumor cells have been reported to express VLA-4 and  
10 compounds which bind VLA-4 block adhesion of such cells to endothelial  
cells. Steinback et al., *Urol. Res.* 23, 175-83 (1995); Orosz et al., *Int. J.*  
5 *Cancer* 60, 867-71 (1995); Freedman et al., *Leuk. Lymphoma* 13, 47-52  
(1994); Okahara et al., *Cancer Res.* 54, 3233-6 (1994).

15 A further use of the compounds of this invention is in treating multiple  
sclerosis. Multiple sclerosis is a progressive neurological autoimmune  
20 disease that affects an estimated 250,000 to 350,000 people in the United  
States. Multiple sclerosis is thought to be the result of a specific  
autoimmune reaction in which certain leukocytes attack and initiate the  
25 destruction of myelin, the insulating sheath covering nerve fibers. In an  
animal model for multiple sclerosis, murine monoclonal antibodies directed  
15 against VLA-4 have been shown to block the adhesion of leukocytes to the  
endothelium, and thus prevent inflammation of the central nervous system  
and subsequent paralysis in the animals<sup>16</sup>.

30 Pharmaceutical compositions of the invention are suitable for use in a  
20 variety of drug delivery systems. Suitable formulations for use in the present  
35 invention are found in *Remington's Pharmaceutical Sciences*, Mace  
Publishing Company, Philadelphia, PA, 17th ed. (1985).

40 In order to enhance serum half-life, the compounds may be  
25 encapsulated, introduced into the lumen of liposomes, prepared as a colloid,  
or other conventional techniques may be employed which provide an  
extended serum half-life of the compounds. A variety of methods are  
45 available for preparing liposomes, as described in, e.g., Szoka, et al., U.S.  
Patent Nos. 4,235,871, 4,501,728 and 4,837,028 each of which is  
30 incorporated herein by reference.

5 The amount administered to the patient will vary depending upon what  
is being administered, the purpose of the administration, such as prophylaxis  
10 or therapy, the state of the patient, the manner of administration, and the  
like. In therapeutic applications, compositions are administered to a patient  
5 already suffering from a disease in an amount sufficient to cure or at least  
partially arrest the symptoms of the disease and its complications. An  
15 amount adequate to accomplish this is defined as "therapeutically effective  
dose." Amounts effective for this use will depend on the disease condition  
being treated as well as by the judgment of the attending clinician depending  
20 upon factors such as the severity of the inflammation, the age, weight and  
general condition of the patient, and the like.

25 The compositions administered to a patient are in the form of  
pharmaceutical compositions described above. These compositions may be  
15 sterilized by conventional sterilization techniques, or may be sterile filtered.  
The resulting aqueous solutions may be packaged for use as is, or  
30 lyophilized, the lyophilized preparation being combined with a sterile  
aqueous carrier prior to administration. The pH of the compound  
preparations typically will be between 3 and 11, more preferably from 5 to 9  
20 and most preferably from 7 to 8. It will be understood that use of certain of  
35 the foregoing excipients, carriers, or stabilizers will result in the formation  
of pharmaceutical salts.

40 The therapeutic dosage of the compounds of the present invention will  
25 vary according to, for example, the particular use for which the treatment is  
made, the manner of administration of the compound, the health and  
condition of the patient, and the judgment of the prescribing physician. For  
45 example, for intravenous administration, the dose will typically be in the  
range of about 20  $\mu\text{g}$  to about 500  $\mu\text{g}$  per kilogram body weight, preferably  
30 about 100  $\mu\text{g}$  to about 300  $\mu\text{g}$  per kilogram body weight. Suitable dosage  
50 ranges for intranasal administration are generally about 0.1  $\mu\text{g}$  to 1 mg per

kilogram body weight. Effective doses can be extrapolated from dose-response curves derived from *in vitro* or animal model test systems.

The following synthetic and biological examples are offered to illustrate this invention and are not to be construed in any way as limiting the scope of this invention. Unless otherwise stated, all temperatures are in degrees Celsius.

### EXAMPLES

In the examples below, the following abbreviations have the following meanings. If an abbreviation is not defined, it has its generally accepted meaning.

aq or aq.	=	aqueous
AcOH	=	acetic acid
bd	=	broad doublet
bm	=	broad multiplet
bs	=	broad singlet
Bn	=	benzyl
Boc	=	<i>N-tert</i> -butoxycarbonyl
Boc <sub>2</sub> O	=	di- <i>tert</i> -butyl dicarbonate
BOP	=	benzotriazol-1-yloxy-tris(dimethylamino)phosphonium hexafluorophosphate
Cbz	=	carbobenzyloxy
CHCl <sub>3</sub>	=	chloroform
CH <sub>2</sub> Cl <sub>2</sub>	=	dichloromethane
(COCl) <sub>2</sub>	=	oxalyl chloride
d	=	doublet
dd	=	doublet of doublets
dt	=	doublet of triplets
DBU	=	1,8-diazabicyclo[5.4.0]undec-7-ene
DCC	=	1,3-dicyclohexylcarbodiimide
DMAP	=	4- <i>N,N</i> -dimethylaminopyridine
DME	=	ethylene glycol dimethyl ether
DMF	=	<i>N,N</i> -dimethylformamide
DMSO	=	dimethylsulfoxide
EDC	=	1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethylcarbodiimide hydrochloride
Et <sub>3</sub> N	=	triethylamine
Et <sub>2</sub> O	=	diethyl ether



5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

		EtOAc	=	ethyl acetate
		EtOH	=	ethanol
		eq or eq.	=	equivalent
		Fmoc	=	<i>N</i> -(9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl)
	5	FmocONSu	=	<i>N</i> -(9-fluorenylmethoxycarbonyl)-succinimide
		g	=	grams
		h	=	hour
		H <sub>2</sub> O	=	water
	10	HBr	=	hydrobromic acid
		HCl	=	hydrochloric acid
		HOBT	=	1-hydroxybenzotriazole hydrate
		hr	=	hour
		K <sub>2</sub> CO <sub>3</sub>	=	potassium carbonate
	15	L	=	liter
		m	=	multiplet
		MeOH	=	methanol
		mg	=	milligram
		MgSO <sub>4</sub>	=	magnesium sulfate
	20	mL	=	milliliter
		mm	=	millimeter
		mM	=	millimolar
		mmol	=	millimol
		mp	=	melting point
	25	N	=	normal
		NaCl	=	sodium chloride
		Na <sub>2</sub> CO <sub>3</sub>	=	sodium carbonate
		NaHCO <sub>3</sub>	=	sodium bicarbonate
		NaOEt	=	sodium ethoxide
	30	NaOH	=	sodium hydroxide
		NH <sub>4</sub> Cl	=	ammonium chloride
		NMM	=	<i>N</i> -methylmorpholine
		Phe	=	L-phenylalanine
		Pro	=	L-proline
	35	psi	=	pounds per square inch
		PtO <sub>2</sub>	=	platinum oxide
		q	=	quartet
		quint.	=	quintet
		rt	=	room temperature
	40	s	=	singlet
		sat	=	saturated
		t	=	triplet
		<i>t</i> -BuOH	=	<i>tert</i> -butanol
		TFA	=	trifluoroacetic acid
	45	THF	=	tetrahydrofuran
		TLC or tlc	=	thin layer chromatography

--95--

Ts = tosyl  
TsCl = tosyl chloride  
TsOH = tosylate  
 $\mu\text{L}$  = microliter

In the examples below, all temperatures are in degrees Celcius (unless otherwise indicated). The following Methods were used to prepare the compounds set forth below as indicated.

#### Method 1

##### N-Tosylation Procedure

N-Tosylation of the appropriate amino acid was conducted via the method of Cupps, Boutin and Rapoport *J. Org. Chem.* **1985**, *50*, 3972.

#### Method 2

##### Methyl Ester Preparation Procedure

Amino acid methyl esters were prepared using the method of Brenner and Huber *Helv. Chim. Acta* **1953**, *36*, 1109.

#### Method 3

##### BOP Coupling Procedure

The desired dipeptide ester was prepared by the reaction of a suitable N-protected amino acid (1 equivalent) with the appropriate amino acid ester or amino acid ester hydrochloride (1 equivalent), benzotriazol-1-yloxy-tris(dimethylamino)phosphonium hexafluorophosphate [BOP] (2.0 equivalent), triethylamine (1.1 equivalent), and DMF. The reaction mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight. The crude product is purified flash chromatography to afford the dipeptide ester.

#### Method 4

##### Hydrogenation Procedure I

Hydrogenation was performed using 10% palladium on carbon (10% by weight) in methanol at 30 psi overnight. The mixture was filtered through a pad of Celite and the filtrate concentrated to yield the desired amino compound.

#### Method 5

##### Hydrolysis Procedure I

To a chilled (0°C) THF/H<sub>2</sub>O solution (2:1, 5 - 10 mL) of the appropriate ester was added LiOH (or NaOH) (0.95 equivalents). The temperature was maintained at 0°C and the reaction was complete in 1-3 hours. The reaction mixture was extracted with ethyl acetate and the aqueous phase was lyophilized resulting in the desired carboxylate salt.

#### Method 6

##### Ester Hydrolysis Procedure II

To a chilled (0°C) THF/H<sub>2</sub>O solution (2:1, 5 - 10 mL) of the appropriate ester was added LiOH (1.1 equivalents). The temperature was maintained at 0°C and the reaction was complete in 1-3 hours. The reaction mixture was concentrated and the residue was taken up into H<sub>2</sub>O and the pH adjusted to 2-3 with aqueous HCl. The product was extracted with ethyl acetate and the combined organic phase was washed with brine, dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and concentrated to yield the desired acid.

#### Method 7

##### Ester Hydrolysis Procedure III

The appropriate ester was dissolved in dioxane/H<sub>2</sub>O (1:1) and 0.9 equivalents of 0.5 N NaOH was added. The reaction was stirred for 3-16 hours and then concentrated. The resulting residue was dissolved in H<sub>2</sub>O and extracted with ethyl acetate. The aqueous phase was lyophilized to yield the desired carboxylate sodium salt.

--97--

## Method 8

Sulfonylation Procedure I

To the appropriately protected aminophenylalanine analog (11.2 mmol), dissolved in methylene chloride (25ml) and cooled to -78°C was added the desired sulfonyl chloride (12 mmol) followed by dropwise addition of pyridine (2 mL). The solution was allowed to warm to room temperature and was stirred for 48 hr. The reaction solution was transferred to a 250 mL separatory funnel with methylene chloride (100 mL) and extracted with 1N HCl (50 mL x 3), brine (50 mL), and water (100 mL). The organic phase was dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub>) and the solvent concentrated to yield the desired product.

## Method 9

Reductive Amination Procedure

Reductive amination of Tos-Pro-p-NH<sub>2</sub>-Phe with the appropriate aldehyde was conducted using acetic acid, sodium triacetoxyborohydride, methylene chloride and the combined mixture was stirred at room temperature overnight. The crude product was purified by flash chromatography.

## Method 10

BOC Removal Procedure

Anhydrous hydrochloride (HCl) gas was bubbled through a methanolic solution of the appropriate Boc-amino acid ester at 0°C for 15 minutes and the reaction mixture was stirred for three hours. The solution was concentrated to a syrup and dissolved in Et<sub>2</sub>O and reconcentrated. This procedure was repeated and the resulting solid was placed under high vacuum overnight.

## Method 11

Tert-Butyl Ester Hydrolysis Procedure I

The *tert*-butyl ester was dissolved in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  and treated with TFA. The reaction was complete in 1-3 hr at which time the reaction mixture was concentrated and the residue dissolved in  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  and lyophilized to yield the desired acid.

#### Method 12

##### EDC Coupling Procedure I

To a  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  solution (5-20 mL) of N-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-proline (1 equivalent), the appropriate amino acid ester hydrochloride (1 equivalent), N-methylmorpholine (1.1-2.2 equivalents) and 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (2 equivalents) were mixed, placed in an ice bath and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethyl carbodiimide (1.1 equivalents) added. The reaction was allowed to rise to room temperature and stirred overnight. The reaction mixture was poured into  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  and the organic phase was washed with sat.  $\text{NaHCO}_3$ , brine, dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$  or  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ ), filtered and concentrated. The crude product was purified by column chromatography.

#### Method 13

##### EDC Coupling Procedure II

To a DMF solution (5-20 mL) of the appropriate N-protected amino acid (1 equivalent), the appropriated amino acid ester hydrochloride (1 equivalent),  $\text{Et}_3\text{N}$  (1.1 equivalents) and 1-hydroxybenzotriazole (2 equivalents) were mixed, placed in an ice bath and 1-(3-dimethylaminopropyl)-3-ethyl carbodiimide (1.1 equivalents) added. The reaction was allowed to rise to room temperature and stirred overnight. The reaction mixture was partitioned between EtOAc and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  and the organic phase washed with 0.2 N citric acid,  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$ , sat.  $\text{NaHCO}_3$ , brine, dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$  or  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ ), filtered and concentrated. The crude product was purified by column chromatography or preparative TLC.

## Method 14

Sulfonylation Procedure II

The appropriate sulfonyl chloride was dissolved in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  and placed in an ice bath. L-Pro-L-Phe-OMe  $\cdot$  HCl (1 equivalent) and  $\text{Et}_3\text{N}$  (1.1 equivalent) was added and the reaction allowed to warm to room temperature and stirred overnight under an atmosphere of nitrogen. The reaction mixture was concentrated and the residue partitioned between EtOAc and  $\text{H}_2\text{O}$  and the organic phase washed with sat.  $\text{NaHCO}_3$ , brine, dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$  or  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ ), filtered and concentrated. The crude product was purified by column chromatography or preparative TLC.

## Method 15

Sulfonylation Procedure III

To a solution of L-Pro-L-4-(3-dimethylaminopropoxy)-Phe-OMe [prepared using the procedure described in Method 10] (1 equivalent) in  $\text{CH}_2\text{Cl}_2$  was added  $\text{Et}_3\text{N}$  (5 equivalents) followed by the appropriate sulfonyl chloride (1.1 equivalent). The reaction was allowed to warm to room temperature and stirred overnight under an atmosphere of nitrogen. The mixture was concentrated, dissolved in EtOAc, washed with sat.  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  and 0.2 N citric acid. The aqueous phase was made basic with solid  $\text{NaHCO}_3$  and the product extracted with EtOAc. The organic phase was washed with brine, dried ( $\text{MgSO}_4$  or  $\text{Na}_2\text{SO}_4$ ), filtered and concentrated. The crude methyl ester was purified by preparative TLC. The corresponding acid was prepared using the procedure described in Method 7.

## Method 16

Hydrogenation Procedure II

To a methanol (10 -15 mL) solution of the azlactone, was added NaOAc (1 equivalent) and 10% Pd/C. This mixture was placed on the hydrogenator at 40 psi  $\text{H}_2$ . After 8 - 16 hours, the reaction mixture was filtered through a pad of Celite and the filtrate concentrated to yield the dehydrideptide

5 methyl ester. The ester was dissolved in dioxane/H<sub>2</sub>O (5- 10 mL), to which  
was added 0.5 N NaOH (1.05 equivalents). After stirring for 1- 3 hours,  
10 the reaction mix was concentrated and the residue was redissolved in H<sub>2</sub>O  
and washed with EtOAc. The aqueous phase was made acidic with 0.2 N  
5 HCl and the product was extracted with EtOAc. The combined organic  
phase was washed with brine (1 x 5 mL), dried (MgSO<sub>4</sub> or Na<sub>2</sub>SO<sub>4</sub>), filtered  
15 and concentrated to yield the acid as approximately a 1:1 mixture of  
diastereomers.

## Method 17

Tert-Butyl Ester Hydrolysis Procedure II.

10 The *tert*-butyl ester was dissolved in CH<sub>2</sub>Cl<sub>2</sub> (5 mL) and treated with  
TFA (5 mL). The reaction was complete in 1-3 hours at which time the  
25 reaction mixture was concentrated and the residue dissolved in H<sub>2</sub>O and  
concentrated. The residue was redissolved in H<sub>2</sub>O and lyophilized to yield  
15 the desired product.

## Example 1

## Synthesis of

*N*-[*N*-(Toluene-4-sulfonyl)-*L*-pyrrolidin-2-ylmethyl]-*L*-phenylalanine

20 *N*-(Toluene-4-sulfonyl)-*L*-prolinol (358 mg, 1.41 mmol) was taken into  
35 7 mL of dry DMSO, with Et<sub>3</sub>N (3.0 eq, 590 mL) at room temperature,  
under N<sub>2</sub>. In a separate flask, pyridine sulfur trioxide complex (3.0 eq, 660  
25 mg) in 3 mL of DMSO, was cooled to 15°C under N<sub>2</sub>. The prolinol  
40 solution was syringed into the latter reaction mixture and allowed to warm  
up to room temperature. The reaction, after a couple of hours, was poured  
into cold brine (10 mL), then extracted with ether (2x 50 mL). The organic  
45 layer was washed with 10% citric acid (25 mL), water, saturated NaHCO<sub>3</sub>  
(25 mL), and brine. Upon filtration and evaporation of the solvent under  
30 reduced pressure, the desired prolinal was isolated as a fluffy solid. This  
50 was then taken up in MeOH (4 mL) with *L*-phenylalanine benzyl ester, and

NaCNBH<sub>3</sub> (1.0 eq). The pH was maintained at 6.0, with 1 drop of AcOH. The reaction mixture was stirred overnight at room temperature. EtOAc was added as well as water and brine. The organic layer was washed several times, and dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>. Upon filtration and evaporation of the solvents under reduced pressure, the crude material was eluted on column chromatography (silica gel) with EtOAc/hexanes 1:1. The ester was diluted in EtOAc/EtOH/water 1:0.5:0.5, with a catalytic amount of 10% Pd on C and hydrogenated. After filtration over Celite, the title product was isolated as a white foam.

Physical data were as follows:

<sup>1</sup>H NMR (300 MHz, CDCl<sub>3</sub>): δ = 7.76 (m, 2H), 7.39-7.26 (m, 7H), 4.05 (m, 1H), 3.92 (m, 1H), 3.55-3.12 (m, 5H), 2.82 (m, 1H), 2.38 (s, 3H), 1.55 (m, 3H), 1.25 (m, 2H).

Mass Spectroscopy: (FAB) 403 (M+H).

## Example 2

### Synthesis of N-[N-(Toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolinyl]-N-hydroxy-L-phenylalanine

Powdered sodium nitrite (1.27 g) was added portion-wise at 0°C to a solution of potassium bromide (4.896 g) and D-phenylalanine (2 g) in 2.5 N sulfuric acid (24.2 mL). The reaction mixture was stirred 20 minutes at 0°C followed by 1 hour at ambient temperature. The product was extracted with ether (3 x 15 mL), the combined organic extract washed with water, brine, dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and evaporated to dryness *in vacuo*. The product (2.4 g) was used without further purification in the next reaction. The methyl ester was prepared using thionyl chloride and methanol. This product (2 g) was added at once to a solution of hydroxylamine in methanol (10 mL). The free hydroxylamine was prepared by treating hydroxylamine HCl (1.15 g) in methanol (10 mL) with Na (380 mg). The reaction mixture was refluxed overnight, evaporated *in vacuo* and the residue partitioned between water and chloroform. The separated organic layer was dried and



5  
10  
15  
20  
25  
30  
35  
40  
45  
50  
55

evaporated. The residue was re-partitioned between 2N HCl and ether. The separated aqueous layer was made basic with NaHCO<sub>3</sub>, extracted with chloroform, dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and evaporated *in vacuo* furnishing 400 mg of N-hydroxy-L-phenylalanine methyl ester. A solution of N-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-proline carbonyl chloride (412 mg) in THF (10 mL) was added dropwise at 0°C to a solution of the product from the last reaction (280 mg) in THF (20 mL) containing triethylamine (145 mg). The mixture was stirred for one hour at 0°C, one hour at ambient temperature, then evaporated *in vacuo* and the residue partitioned between water and ethyl acetate. The separated organic layer was dried over MgSO<sub>4</sub>, filtered and evaporated *in vacuo*. The residue was flash chromatographed on 30 g silica gel. Elution with chloroform furnished 360 mg of N-[N-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolinyl]-N-hydroxy-L-phenylalanine methyl ester. The title compound was prepared from the product of the last reaction (1150 mg) in THF (80 mL) which was treated at once with 1N NaOH (2.57 mL). This mixture was stirred at ambient temperature overnight. The crystallized product was filtered, washed with ether and dried at 0.1 Torr to yield 750 mg of the title compound, mp 202-204°C.

### Example 3

#### Synthesis of

#### N-[N-(Toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolinyl]-N-hydroxy-D-phenylalanine

The title compound was prepared following the procedure described for the preparation of Example 2, substituting L-phenylalanine for D-phenylalanine.

Physical data were as follows:

MS: [(+ )FAB], [M + H]<sup>+</sup> 433.

### Example 4

#### Synthesis of

**N-[2-(N-(Toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-pyrrolidinyl)-2-hydroxyacetyl]-L-4-(N-benzyloxycarbonyl-isonipecotamido)phenylalanine**

2-(Hydroxyacetyl)pyrrolidine (*J. Org. Chem.* (1991), 56, 1624) was N-tosylated and the resultant product coupled to the appropriately substituted phenylalanine utilizing standard peptide synthesis methodology. The title compound was obtained after basic hydrolysis of the ester, mp 92-95°C.

Physical data were as follows:

MS (+)FAB [M+H]<sup>+</sup> 707.

**Example 5**

**Synthesis of**

**N-[2-(N-(Toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-pyrrolidinyl)-2-hydroxyacetyl]-L-4-(isonipecotamido)phenylalanine**

The product from Example 4 was deprotected by hydrogenation over Pd/C in ethanol for 4 hours. The catalyst was filtered and the filtrate was taken up in water and lyophilized to give 240 mg of a white solid.

Physical data were as follows:

MS (+)FAB [M+H]<sup>+</sup> 573.

Calcd. for: C<sub>28</sub>H<sub>36</sub>N<sub>4</sub>O<sub>7</sub>S · CF<sub>3</sub>CO<sub>2</sub>H · 3H<sub>2</sub>O. C: 48.71; H: 5.73; N: 7.57. Found: C: 48.88; H: 5.35; N: 7.45.

**Example 6**

**Synthesis of**

**(2S)-2-[5-(N-(Toluene-4-sulfonyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)tetrazol-1-yl]-2-(4-nitrobenzyl)propionic Acid**

N-(Toluene-4-sulfonyl-L-prolyl-L-(4-nitro)phenylalanine methyl ester was mixed with an equimolar amount of PCl<sub>5</sub> in dry benzene and stirred for 90 minutes. The yellow solution was treated with a solution of hydrazoic acid in benzene and the mixture was stirred at room temperature for 2 hours, then it was diluted with benzene and washed with satd. NaHCO<sub>3</sub> and brine. The organic layer was dried and evaporated to give a light yellow foam.

The title compound was prepared from the product of the last reaction using standard basic hydrolysis techniques, yielding an off-white fluffy solid, mp 150-160°C.

Physical data were as follows:

MS (+)FAB [M+H]<sup>+</sup> 487.

#### Example 7

##### Synthesis of

(2S)-2-[5-(N-(Toluene-4-sulfonyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)tetrazol-1-yl]-2-(4-(N-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl isonipecotamido)benzyl)propionic Acid Methyl Ester

The nitro intermediate described in Example 6 was reduced, dissolved in methylene chloride and mixed with N-Boc-isonipecotic acid, HOBT, chilled to 5°C and treated with DCC. The reaction mixture was allowed to reach ambient temperature overnight, filtered, evaporated to dryness and the residue was taken up in ethyl acetate. The organic phase was washed as usual, dried and evaporated to provide the title compound, mp 92-102°C.

Physical data were as follows:

MS (+)FAB [M+H]<sup>+</sup> 682.

#### Example 8

##### Synthesis of

(2S)-2-[5-(N-(Toluene-4-sulfonyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)tetrazol-1-yl]-2-(4-(N-*tert*-butoxycarbonyl isonipecotamido)benzyl)propionic Acid

The title compound was prepared from the product of Example 7 using standard basic hydrolysis techniques, mp 180-189°C.

Physical data were as follows:

MS (+)FAB [M+Li]<sup>+</sup> 674.

#### Example 9

##### Synthesis of

N-[N-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl]aminocarbonyl]-L-phenylalanine

N-Tosylproline (1 g, 3.71 mmol) was added to a solution of diphenylphosphoryl azide (1.13 g, 3.71 mmol) in 50 mL toluene under argon atmosphere. Triethylamine (394 mg, 3.9 mmol) was added, then the mixture was heated at 80°C for 2 hrs. L-Phenylalanine benzyl ester (1.75 g, 4.1 mmol) and triethylamine (394 mg, 3.9 mmol) was added and heated at 80°C overnight. The toluene was removed under reduced pressure and the residue purified by flash column chromatography (silica, hexane:EtOAc, 2:1) to give the benzyl ester as a white solid (540 mg, 28%). The benzyl ester was removed by hydrogenation (10% Pd/C, EtOH, 40 psi H<sub>2</sub>). The catalyst was removed and the product recrystallized from EtOH/Et<sub>2</sub>O to give the title compound as a white solid (75 mg, 40%).

Physical data were as follows:

C<sub>21</sub>H<sub>25</sub>N<sub>3</sub>O<sub>5</sub>S · 0.75 H<sub>2</sub>O. Calcd C: 56.68; H: 6.00; N: 9.44. Found C: 56.94; H: 5.68; N: 9.05.

Mass Spec [FAB] [M-H]<sup>-</sup> @ M/Z 430 (100%).

#### Example A

##### *In vitro* Assay For Determining Binding of Candidate Compounds to VLA-4

An *in vitro* assay was used to assess binding of candidate compounds to  $\alpha_4\beta_1$  integrin. Compounds which bind in this assay can be used to assess VCAM-1 levels in biological samples by conventional assays (e.g., competitive assays). This assay is sensitive to IC<sub>50</sub> values as low as about 1nM.

The activity of  $\alpha_4\beta_1$  integrin was measured by the interaction of soluble VCAM-1 with Jurkat cells (e.g., American Type Culture Collection Nos. TIB 152, TIB 153, and CRL 8163), a human T-cell line which expresses high levels of  $\alpha_4\beta_1$  integrin. VCAM-1 interacts with the cell surface in an

$\alpha_4\beta_1$  integrin-dependent fashion (Yednock, et al. J. Biol. Chem., 1995, 270:28740).

Recombinant soluble VCAM-1 was expressed as a chimeric fusion protein containing the seven extracellular domains of VCAM-1 on the N-terminus and the human IgG<sub>1</sub> heavy chain constant region on the C-terminus. The VCAM-1 fusion protein was made and purified by the manner described by Yednock, *supra*.

Jurkat cells were grown in RPMI 1640 supplemented with 10% fetal bovine serum, penicillin, streptomycin and glutamine as described by Yednock, *supra*.

Jurkat cells were incubated with 1.5 mM MnCl<sub>2</sub> and 5  $\mu$ g/mL 15/7 antibody for 30 minutes on ice. Mn<sup>+2</sup> activates the receptor to enhance ligand binding, and 15/7 is a monoclonal antibody that recognizes an activated/ligand occupied conformation of  $\alpha_4\beta_1$  integrin and locks the molecule into this conformation thereby stabilizing the VCAM-1/ $\alpha_4\beta_1$  integrin interaction. Yednock, et al., *supra*. Antibodies similar to the 15/7 antibody have been prepared by other investigators (Luque, et al, 1996, J. Biol. Chem. 271:11067) and may be used in this assay.

Cells were then incubated for 30 minutes at room temperature with candidate compounds, in various concentrations ranging from 66  $\mu$ M to 0.01  $\mu$ M using a standard 5-point serial dilution. 15  $\mu$ L soluble recombinant VCAM-1 fusion protein was then added to Jurkat cells and incubated for 30 minutes on ice. (Yednock et al., *supra*).

Cells were then washed two times and resuspended in PE-conjugated goat F(ab')<sub>2</sub> anti-mouse IgG Fc (Immunotech, Westbrook, ME) at 1:200 and incubated on ice, in the dark, for 30 minutes. Cells were washed twice and

--107--

analyzed with a standard fluorescence activated cell sorter ("FACS") analysis as described in Yednock, et al., *supra*.

Compounds having an  $IC_{50}$  of less than about  $15\mu M$  possess binding affinity to  $\alpha_4\beta_1$ .

When tested in this assay, each of the compounds in Examples 1-9 has an  $IC_{50}$  of  $15\mu M$  or less.

#### Example B

##### *In vitro* Saturation Assay For Determining Binding of Candidate Compounds to $\alpha_4\beta_1$

The following describes an *in vitro* assay to determine the plasma levels needed for a compound to be active in the Experimental Autoimmune Encephalomyelitis ("EAE") model, described in the next example, or in other *in vivo* models.

Log-growth Jurkat cells are washed and resuspended in normal animal plasma containing  $20\mu g/ml$  of the 15/7 antibody (described in the above example).

The Jurkat cells are diluted two-fold into either normal plasma samples containing known candidate compound amounts in various concentrations ranging from  $66\mu M$  to  $0.01\mu M$ , using a standard 12 point serial dilution for a standard curve, or into plasma samples obtained from the peripheral blood of candidate compound-treated animals.

Cells are then incubated for 30 minutes at room temperature, washed twice with phosphate-buffered saline ("PBS") containing 2% fetal bovine serum and  $1mM$  each of calcium chloride and magnesium chloride (assay medium) to remove unbound 15/7 antibody.

The cells are then exposed to phycoerythrin-conjugated goat F(ab')<sub>2</sub> anti-mouse IgG Fc (Immunotech, Westbrook, ME), which has been adsorbed for any non-specific cross-reactivity by co-incubation with 5% serum from the animal species being studied, at 1:200 and incubated in the dark at 4°C for 30 minutes.

Cells are washed twice with assay medium and resuspended in the same. They are then analyzed with a standard fluorescence activated cell sorter ("FACS") analysis as described in Yednock et al. J. Biol. Chem., 1995, 270:28740.

The data is then graphed as fluorescence versus dose, e.g., in a normal dose-response fashion. The dose levels that result in the upper plateau of the curve represent the levels needed to obtain efficacy in an *in vivo* model.

This assay may also be used to determine the plasma levels needed to saturate the binding sites of other integrins, such as the  $\alpha_v\beta_1$  integrin, which is the integrin most closely related  $\alpha_v\beta_1$  (Palmer et al, 1993, J. Cell Bio., 123:1289). Such binding is predictive of *in vivo* utility for inflammatory conditions mediated by  $\alpha_v\beta_1$  integrin, including by way of example, airway hyper-responsiveness and occlusion that occurs with chronic asthma, smooth muscle cell proliferation in atherosclerosis, vascular occlusion following angioplasty, fibrosis and glomerular scarring as a result of renal disease, aortic stenosis, hypertrophy of synovial membranes in rheumatoid arthritis, and inflammation and scarring that occur with the progression of ulcerative colitis and Crohn's disease.

Accordingly, the above-described assay may be performed with a human colon carcinoma cell line, SW 480 (ATTC #CCL228) transfected with cDNA encoding  $\alpha_v$  integrin (Yokosaki et al., 1994, J. Biol. Chem., 269:26691), in place of the Jurkat cells, to measure the binding of the  $\alpha_v\beta_1$

integrin. As a control, SW 480 cells which express other  $\alpha$  and  $\beta_1$  subunits may be used.

Accordingly, another aspect of this invention is directed to a method for treating a disease in a mammalian patient, which disease is mediated by  $\alpha_9\beta_1$ , and which method comprises administering to said patient a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of this invention. Such compounds are preferably administered in a pharmaceutical composition described herein above. Effective daily dosing will depend upon the age, weight, condition of the patient which factors can be readily ascertained by the attending clinician. However, in a preferred embodiment, the compounds are administered from about 20 to 500  $\mu\text{g/kg}$  per day.

#### Example C

##### *In vivo* Evaluation

The standard multiple sclerosis model, Experimental Autoimmune (or Allergic) Encephalomyelitis ("EAE"), was used to determine the effect of candidate compounds to reduce motor impairment in rats or guinea pigs. Reduction in motor impairment is based on blocking adhesion between leukocytes and the endothelium and correlates with anti-inflammatory activity in the candidate compound. This model has been previously described by Keszthelyi et al., Neurology, 1996, 47:1053-1059, and measures the delay of onset of disease.

Brains and spinal cords of adult Hartley guinea pigs were homogenized in an equal volume of phosphate-buffered saline. An equal volume of Freund's complete adjuvant (100 mg *mycobacterium tuberculosis* plus 10 ml Freund's incomplete adjuvant) was added to the homogenate. The mixture was emulsified by circulating it repeatedly through a 20 ml syringe with a peristaltic pump for about 20 minutes.



Female Lewis rats (2-3 months old, 170-220 g) or Hartley guinea pigs (20 day old, 180-200 g) were anesthetized with isoflurane and three injections of the emulsion, 0.1 ml each, were made in each flank. Motor impairment onset is seen in approximately 9 days.

Candidate compound treatment began on Day 8, just before onset of symptoms. Compounds were administered subcutaneously ("SC"), orally ("PO") or intraperitoneally ("IP"). Doses were given in a range of 10mg/kg to 200 mg/kg, bid, for five days, with typical dosing of 10 to 100 mg/kg SC, 10 to 50 mg/kg PO, and 10 to 100 mg/kg IP.

Antibody GG5/3 against  $\alpha_4\beta_1$  integrin (Keszthelyi et al., Neurology, 1996, 47:1053-1059), which delays the onset of symptoms, was used as a positive control and was injected subcutaneously at 3 mg/kg on Day 8 and 11.

Body weight and motor impairment were measured daily. Motor impairment was rated with the following clinical score:

0	no change
1	tail weakness or paralysis
2	hindlimb weakness
3	hindlimb paralysis
4	moribund or dead

A candidate compound was considered active if it delayed the onset of symptoms, e.g., produced clinical scores no greater than 2 or slowed body weight loss as compared to the control.

#### Example D

#### Asthma Model

Inflammatory conditions mediated by  $\alpha_4\beta_1$  integrin include, for example, airway hyper-responsiveness and occlusion that occurs with chronic asthma. The following describes an asthma model which can be used to study the *in vivo* effects of the compounds of this invention for use in treating asthma.

Following the procedures described by Abraham et al, J. Clin. Invest, 93:776-787 (1994) and Abraham et al, Am J. Respir Crit Care Med, 156:696-703 (1997), both of which are incorporated by reference in their entirety, compounds of this invention are formulated into an aerosol and administered to sheep which are hypersensitive to *Ascaris suum* antigen. Compounds which decrease the early antigen-induced bronchial response and/or block the late-phase airway response, e.g., have a protective effect against antigen-induced late responses and airway hyper-responsiveness ("AHR"), are considered to be active in this model.

Allergic sheep which are shown to develop both early and late bronchial responses to inhaled *Ascaris suum* antigen are used to study the airway effects of the candidate compounds. Following topical anesthesia of the nasal passages with 2% lidocaine, a balloon catheter is advanced through one nostril into the lower esophagus. The animals are then intubated with a cuffed endotracheal tube through the other nostril with a flexible fiberoptic bronchoscope as a guide.

Pleural pressure is estimated according to Abraham (1994). Aerosols (see formulation below) are generated using a disposable medical nebulizer that provides an aerosol with a mass median aerodynamic diameter of 3.2  $\mu\text{m}$  as determined with an Andersen cascade impactor. The nebulizer is connected to a dosimeter system consisting of a solenoid valve and a source of compressed air (20 psi). The output of the nebulizer is directed into a plastic T-piece, one end of which is connected to the inspiratory port of a piston respirator. The solenoid valve is activated for 1 second at the

beginning of the inspiratory cycle of the respirator. Aerosols are delivered at  $V_T$  of 500 ml and a rate of 20 breaths/minute. A 0.5% sodium bicarbonate solution only is used as a control.

To assess bronchial responsiveness, cumulative concentration-response curves to carbachol can be generated according to Abraham (1994). Bronchial biopsies can be taken prior to and following the initiation of treatment and 24 hours after antigen challenge. Bronchial biopsies can be preformed according to Abraham (1994).

An *in vitro* adhesion study of alveolar macrophages can also be performed according to Abraham (1994), and a percentage of adherent cells is calculated.

#### Aerosol Formulation

A solution of the candidate compound in 0.5% sodium bicarbonate/saline (w/v) at a concentration of 30.0 mg/mL is prepared using the following procedure:

#### A. Preparation of 0.5% Sodium Bicarbonate / Saline Stock Solution: 100.0 mL

Ingredient	Gram / 100.0 mL	Final Concentration
Sodium Bicarbonate	0.5 g	0.5%
Saline	q.s. ad 100.0 mL	q.s. ad 100%

#### Procedure:

1. Add 0.5g sodium bicarbonate into a 100 mL volumetric flask.
2. Add approximately 90.0 mL saline and sonicate until dissolved.
3. Q.S. to 100.0 mL with saline and mix thoroughly.

B. Preparation of 30.0 mg/mL Candidate Compound: 10.0 mL

Ingredient	Gram / 10.0 mL	Final Concentration
Candidate Compound	0.300 g	30.0 mg/mL
0.5% Sodium Bicarbonate / Saline Stock Solution	q.s. ad 10.0 mL	q.s ad 100%

## Procedure:

1. Add 0.300 g of the candidate compound into a 10.0 mL volumetric flask.
2. Add approximately 9.7 mL of 0.5% sodium bicarbonate / saline stock solution.
3. Sonicate until the candidate compound is completely dissolved.
4. Q.S. to 10.0 mL with 0.5% sodium bicarbonate / saline stock solution and mix thoroughly.

Using a conventional oral formulation, compounds of this invention would be active in this model.

**Claims**

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

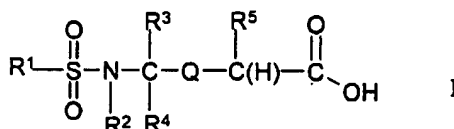
45

50

55

## WHAT IS CLAIMED IS:

1. A compound of formula I:



wherein

$\text{R}^1$  is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, substituted cycloalkenyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic and substituted heterocyclic,;

$\text{R}^2$  is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, substituted cycloalkenyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, and  $\text{R}^1$  and  $\text{R}^2$  together with the nitrogen atom bound to  $\text{R}^2$  and the  $\text{SO}_2$  group can form a heterocyclic or a substituted heterocyclic group;

$\text{R}^3$  is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, substituted cycloalkenyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, and, when  $\text{R}^2$  does not form a heterocyclic group with  $\text{R}^1$ ,  $\text{R}^2$  and  $\text{R}^3$  together with the nitrogen atom bound to  $\text{R}^2$  and the carbon atom bound to  $\text{R}^3$  can form a heterocyclic group or a substituted heterocyclic group;

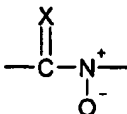
$\text{R}^4$  is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, substituted cycloalkenyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, and, when  $\text{R}^3$  does not form a

heterocyclic or a substituted heterocyclic group with R<sup>2</sup>, then R<sup>3</sup> and R<sup>4</sup> together with the carbon atom to which they are attached can form a cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclic or substituted heterocyclic group;

- 5 R<sup>5</sup> is selected from the group consisting of isopropyl, -CH<sub>2</sub>-W and =CH-W, where W is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, alkoxy, substituted alkoxy, aryl, substituted aryl, aryloxy, substituted aryloxy, aryloxyaryl, substituted aryloxyaryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, acylamino, carboxyl, carboxylalkyl, carboxyl-substituted alkyl, carboxyl-cycloalkyl, carboxyl-substituted cycloalkyl, carboxylaryl, carboxyl-substituted aryl, carboxylheteroaryl, carboxyl-substituted heteroaryl, carboxyheterocyclic, carboxy-substituted heterocyclic, and hydroxyl with the proviso that when R<sup>5</sup> is =CH-W then
- 10 (H) is removed from the formula and W is not hydroxyl;

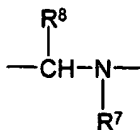
Q is selected from the group consisting of:

(i)



wherein X is selected from the group consisting of oxygen, sulfur and NH;

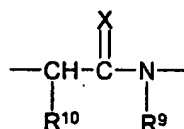
(ii)



wherein R<sup>7</sup> is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl and substituted alkyl;

$R^8$  is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl and substituted alkyl; or  $R^7$  and  $R^8$  together with the nitrogen atom bound to  $R^7$  and the carbon bound to  $R^8$  can form a heterocyclic or substituted heterocyclic ring;

(iii)

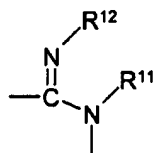


wherein  $R^9$  is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl and substituted alkyl;

$R^{10}$  is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl and substituted alkyl; or  $R^9$  and  $R^{10}$  together with the nitrogen atom bound to  $R^9$ , the carbon atom bound to  $R^{10}$  and the  $\text{---C(X)---}$  group can form a heterocyclic or substituted heterocyclic group;

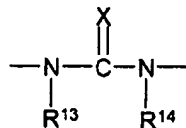
$X$  is selected from the group consisting of oxygen, sulfur and  $\text{NH}$ ;

(iv)



wherein  $R^{11}$  and  $R^{12}$  together with the nitrogen atom bound to  $R^{11}$  and the  $>\text{C}=\text{N}$ - group bound to  $R^{12}$  form a heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, heteroaryl, or substituted heteroaryl ring; and

(v)



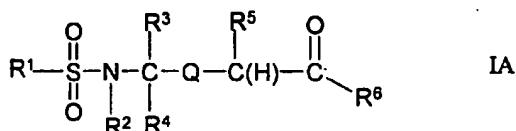


wherein  $R^{13}$  is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and substituted alkyl;

$R^{14}$  is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and substituted alkyl;

$X$  is selected from the group consisting of oxygen, sulfur and NH; and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

2. A compound of formula IA:



wherein

$R^1$  is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, substituted cycloalkenyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic and substituted heterocyclic,;

$R^2$  is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, substituted cycloalkenyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, and  $R^1$  and  $R^2$  together with the nitrogen atom bound to  $R^2$  and the  $\text{SO}_2$  group can form a heterocyclic or a substituted heterocyclic group;

$R^3$  is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, substituted cycloalkenyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, and, when  $R^2$  does not form a heterocyclic group with  $R^1$ ,  $R^2$  and  $R^3$  together with the nitrogen atom bound

to R<sup>2</sup> and the carbon atom bound to R<sup>3</sup> can form a heterocyclic group or a substituted heterocyclic group;

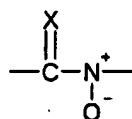
R<sup>4</sup> is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, substituted cycloalkenyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, and, when R<sup>3</sup> does not form a heterocyclic or a substituted heterocyclic group with R<sup>2</sup>, then R<sup>3</sup> and R<sup>4</sup> together with the carbon atom to which they are attached can form a cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclic or substituted heterocyclic group;

R<sup>5</sup> is selected from the group consisting of isopropyl, -CH<sub>2</sub>-W and =CH-W, where W is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, alkoxy, substituted alkoxy, aryl, substituted aryl, aryloxy, substituted aryloxy, aryloxyaryl, substituted aryloxyaryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, acylamino, carboxyl, carboxylalkyl, carboxyl-substituted alkyl, carboxyl-cycloalkyl, carboxyl-substituted cycloalkyl, carboxylaryl, carboxyl-substituted aryl, carboxylheteroaryl, carboxyl-substituted heteroaryl, carboxyheterocyclic, carboxy-substituted heterocyclic, and hydroxyl with the proviso that when R<sup>5</sup> is =CH-W then (H) is removed from the formula and W is not hydroxyl;

R<sup>6</sup> is selected from the group consisting of amino, alkoxy, substituted alkoxy, cycloalkoxy, substituted cycloalkoxy, aryloxy, substituted aryloxy, heteroaryloxy, substituted heteroaryloxy, heterocyclyloxy, substituted heterocyclyloxy, -NHOY where Y is hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, or substituted aryl, and -NH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>p</sub>COOY' where Y' is hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, or substituted aryl, and p is an integer of from 1 to 8;

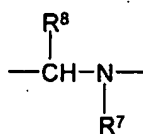
Q is selected from the group consisting of:

(i)



wherein X is selected from the group consisting of oxygen, sulfur and NH;

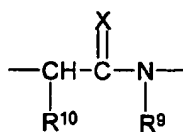
(ii)



wherein R<sup>7</sup> is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl and substituted alkyl;

R<sup>8</sup> is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl and substituted alkyl; or R<sup>7</sup> and R<sup>8</sup> together with the nitrogen atom bound to R<sup>7</sup> and the carbon bound to R<sup>8</sup> can form a heterocyclic or substituted heterocyclic ring;

(iii)

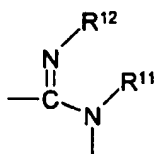


wherein R<sup>9</sup> is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl and substituted alkyl;

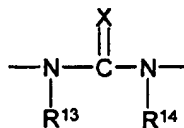
R<sup>10</sup> is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl and substituted alkyl; or R<sup>9</sup> and R<sup>10</sup> together with the nitrogen atom bound to R<sup>9</sup>, the carbon atom bound to R<sup>10</sup> and the -C(X)- group can form a heterocyclic or substituted heterocyclic group;

--120--

X is selected from the group consisting of oxygen, sulfur and NH; and  
(iv)



wherein R<sup>11</sup> and R<sup>12</sup> together with the nitrogen atom bound to R<sup>11</sup> and  
the >C=N- group bound to R<sup>12</sup> form a heterocyclic, substituted  
heterocyclic, heteroaryl, or substituted heteroaryl ring; and  
(v)



wherein R<sup>13</sup> is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl,  
and substituted alkyl;

R<sup>14</sup> is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and  
substituted alkyl;

X is selected from the group consisting of oxygen, sulfur and NH;  
and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

3. The compound according to Claims 1 or 2 wherein R<sup>1</sup> is selected  
from the group consisting of alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl,  
heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, heteroaryl and substituted heteroaryl.

4. The compound according to Claims 1 or 2 wherein R<sup>1</sup> is selected  
from the group consisting of methyl, isopropyl, *n*-butyl, benzyl, phenethyl,  
phenyl, 4-methylphenyl, 4-*t*-butylphenyl, 2,4,6-trimethylphenyl, 2-  
fluorophenyl, 3-fluorophenyl, 4-fluorophenyl, 2,4-difluorophenyl, 3,4-  
difluorophenyl, 3,5-difluorophenyl, 2-chlorophenyl, 3-chlorophenyl, 4-

chlorophenyl, 3,4-dichlorophenyl, 3,5-dichlorophenyl, 3-chloro-4-fluorophenyl, 4-bromophenyl, 2-methoxyphenyl, 3-methoxyphenyl, 4-methoxyphenyl, 3,4-dimethoxyphenyl, 4-*t*-butoxyphenyl, 4-(3'-dimethylamino-*n*-propoxy)-phenyl, 2-carboxyphenyl, 2-(methoxycarbonyl)phenyl, 4-(H<sub>2</sub>NC(O)-)phenyl, 4-(H<sub>2</sub>NC(S)-)phenyl, 4-cyanophenyl, 4-trifluoromethylphenyl, 4-trifluoromethoxyphenyl, 3,5-di-(trifluoromethyl)phenyl, 4-nitrophenyl, 4-aminophenyl, 4-(CH<sub>3</sub>C(O)NH-)phenyl, 4-(PhNHC(O)NH-)phenyl, 4-amidinophenyl, 4-methylamidinophenyl, 4-(CH<sub>3</sub>SC(=NH)-)phenyl, 4-chloro-3-(H<sub>2</sub>NS(O)<sub>2</sub>-)phenyl, 1-naphthyl, 2-naphthyl, pyridin-2-yl, pyridin-3-yl, pyrimidin-2-yl, quinolin-8-yl, 2-(trifluoroacetyl)-1,2,3,4-tetrahydroisoquinolin-7-yl, morpholin-4-yl, 2-thienyl, 5-chloro-2-thienyl, 2,5-dichloro-4-thienyl, 1-N-methylimidazol-4-yl, 1-N-methylpyrazol-3-yl, 1-N-methylpyrazol-4-yl, 1-N-butylpyrazol-4-yl, 1-N-methyl-3-methyl-5-chloropyrazol-4-yl, 1-N-methyl-5-methyl-3-chloropyrazol-4-yl, 2-thiazolyl and 5-methyl-1,3,4-thiadiazol-2-yl.

5. The compound according to Claims 1 or 2 wherein R<sup>2</sup> is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, methyl, phenyl, benzyl, -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>-2-thienyl, and -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>-φ.

6. The compound according to Claims 1 or 2 wherein R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> together with the nitrogen atom bound to R<sup>2</sup> substituent and the carbon bound to the R<sup>3</sup> substituent form a heterocyclic group or a substituted heterocyclic group.

7. The compound according to Claim 6 wherein R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> together with the nitrogen atom bound to R<sup>2</sup> substituent and the carbon bound to the R<sup>3</sup> substituent form a substituted heterocyclic ring.

8. The compound according to Claims 1 or 2 wherein R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> together with the nitrogen atom bound to R<sup>2</sup> and the SO<sub>2</sub> group bound to R<sup>1</sup> are joined to form a heterocyclic ring or a substituted heterocyclic ring.

9. The compound according to Claims 1 or 2 wherein R<sup>3</sup> is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, methyl, phenyl, benzyl, diphenylmethyl, 2-carboxyethyl, 2-amidoethyl, *iso*-butyl, *t*-butyl, carboxymethyl, -CH<sub>2</sub>O-benzyl and hydroxymethyl.

10. The compound according to Claim 1 or 2 wherein R<sup>4</sup> is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, methyl, ethyl and phenyl.

11. The compound according to Claims 1 or 2 wherein Q is selected from the group consisting of -C(O)N(O)-, -CH<sub>2</sub>NH-, -CH(OH)C(O)NH-, -NHC(O)NH- and tetrazol-1,5-diyl.

12. The compound according to Claims 1 or 2 wherein R<sup>5</sup> is selected from the group consisting of

4-methylbenzyl,

4-hydroxybenzyl,

4-methoxybenzyl,

4-*t*-butoxybenzyl,

4-benzyloxybenzyl,

4-[ $\phi$ -CH(CH<sub>3</sub>)O-]benzyl,

4-[ $\phi$ -CH(COOH)O-]benzyl,

4-[BocNHCH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-]benzyl,

4-chlorobenzyl,

4-[NH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-]benzyl,

4-carboxybenzyl,

4-[CbzNHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>NH-]benzyl,

3-hydroxy-4-( $\phi$ -OC(O)NH-)benzyl,

5

4-[HOOCCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
benzyl,

10

4-[2'-carboxyphenoxy-]benzyl,

4-[ $\phi$ -C(O)NH-]benzyl,

5

3-carboxybenzyl,

4-iodobenzyl,

15

4-hydroxy-3,5-diiodobenzyl,

4-hydroxy-3-iodobenzyl,

4-[2'-carboxyphenyl-]benzyl,

20

10

$\phi$ -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-,

4-nitrobenzyl,

2-carboxybenzyl,

4-[dibenzylamino]-benzyl,

25

4-[(1'-cyclopropylpiperidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,

15

4-[-NHC(O)CH<sub>2</sub>NHBoc]benzyl,

4-carboxybenzyl,

30

4-hydroxy-3-nitrobenzyl,

4-[-NHC(O)CH(CH<sub>3</sub>)NHBoc]benzyl,

4-[-NHC(O)CH(CH<sub>2</sub> $\phi$ )NHBoc]benzyl,

20

isobutyl,

35

methyl,

4-[CH<sub>3</sub>C(O)NH-]benzyl,

-CH<sub>2</sub>-(3-indolyl),

40

*n*-butyl,

25

*t*-butyl-OC(O)CH<sub>2</sub>-,

*t*-butyl-OC(O)CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-,

45

H<sub>2</sub>NC(O)CH<sub>2</sub>-,

H<sub>2</sub>NC(O)CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-,

BocNH-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,

30

*t*-butyl-OC(O)-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>-,

50

HOOCCH<sub>2</sub>-,

55

HOOC(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>-,  
H<sub>2</sub>N(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,  
isopropyl,  
(1-naphthyl)-CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
5 (2-naphthyl)-CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
(2-thiophenyl)-CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
15 (φ-CH<sub>2</sub>-OC(O)NH-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,  
cyclohexyl-CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
benzyloxy-CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
20 10 HOCH<sub>2</sub>-,  
5-(3-N-benzyl)imidazolyl-CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
2-pyridyl-CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
3-pyridyl-CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
25 4-pyridyl-CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
15 5-(3-N-methyl)imidazolyl-CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
N-benzylpiperid-4-yl-CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
30 N-Boc-piperidin-4-yl-CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
N-(phenyl-carbonyl)piperidin-4-yl-CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
H<sub>3</sub>CSCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
20 1-N-benzylimidazol-4-yl-CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
35 *iso*-propyl-C(O)NH-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,  
*iso*-butyl-C(O)NH-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,  
phenyl-C(O)NH-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,  
40 benzyl-C(O)NH-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,  
25 allyl-C(O)NH-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,  
4-(3-N-methylimidazolyl)-CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
45 4-imidazolyl,  
4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-O-]benzyl,  
4-[(benzyl)<sub>2</sub>N-]-benzyl,  
30 4-aminobenzyl,  
50 allyloxy-C(O)NH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,  
55



5

allyloxy-C(O)NH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>-,allyloxy-C(O)NH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>-,

10

NH<sub>2</sub>C(O)CH<sub>2</sub>-,

φ-CH=,

5

2-pyridyl-C(O)NH-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,4-methylpyrid-3-yl-C(O)NH-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,

15

3-methylthien-2-yl-C(O)NH-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,2-pyrrolyl-C(O)NH-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,2-furanyl-C(O)NH-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,

20

10

4-methylphenyl-SO<sub>2</sub>-N(CH<sub>3</sub>)CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,

4-[cyclopentylacetylenyl]-benzyl,

4-[-NHC(O)-(N-Boc-pyrrolidin-2-yl)]-benzyl-,

1-N-methylimidazol-4-yl-CH<sub>2</sub>-,

25

1-N-methylimidazol-5-yl-CH<sub>2</sub>-,

15

imidazol-5-yl-CH<sub>2</sub>-,6-methylpyrid-3-yl-C(O)NH-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,

30

4-[2'-carboxymethylphenyl]-benzyl,

4-[-NHC(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-φ]-benzyl,4-[-NHC(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-φ]-benzyl,

20

-CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>φ,

35

4-[φ(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>O-]-benzyl,

4-[-C≡C-φ-4'φ]-benzyl,

4-[-C≡C-CH<sub>2</sub>-O-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-4'-CH<sub>3</sub>-φ]-benzyl,

40

4-[-C≡C-CH<sub>2</sub>NHC(O)NH<sub>2</sub>]-benzyl,

25

4-[-C≡C-CH<sub>2</sub>-O-4'-COOCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>-φ]-benzyl,4-[-C≡C-CH(NH<sub>2</sub>)-cyclohexyl]-benzyl,

45

-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NHC(O)CH<sub>2</sub>-3-indolyl,-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NHC(O)CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-3-indolyl,-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NHC(O)-3-(5-methoxyindolyl),

30

-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NHC(O)-3-(1-methylindolyl),

50

-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NHC(O)-4-(-SO<sub>2</sub>(CH<sub>3</sub>)-φ),

55

5

-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NHC(O)-4-(C(O)CH<sub>3</sub>)-phenyl,

-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NHC(O)-4-fluorophenyl,

10

-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NHC(O)CH<sub>2</sub>O-4-fluorophenyl,

4-[-C≡C-(2-pyridyl)]benzyl,

5

4-[-C≡C-CH<sub>2</sub>-O-phenyl]benzyl,

4-[-C≡C-CH<sub>2</sub>OCH<sub>3</sub>]benzyl,

15

4-[-C≡C-(3-hydroxyphenyl)]benzyl,

4-[-C≡C-CH<sub>2</sub>-O-4'-(-C(O)OC<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>)phenyl]benzyl,

4-[-C≡C-CH<sub>2</sub>CH(C(O)OCH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>]benzyl,

20

10

4-[-C≡C-CH<sub>2</sub>NH-(4,5-dihydro-4-oxo-5-phenyl-oxazol-2-yl),

3-aminobenzyl,

4-[-C≡C-CH<sub>2</sub>CH(NHC(O)CH<sub>3</sub>)C(O)OH]-benzyl,

25

-CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NHCH(CH<sub>3</sub>)φ,

-CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>-(4-dimethylamino)-φ,

15

-CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>-4-nitrophenyl,

-CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)N(CH<sub>3</sub>)CH<sub>2</sub>-φ,

30

-CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-(N-methyl)-2-pyrrolyl,

-CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>,

-CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-3-indolyl,

20

-CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)N(CH<sub>3</sub>)CH<sub>2</sub>phenyl,

35

-CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>-(N-methyl)-2-pyrrolyl,

-CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>,

-CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-3-indolyl,

40

-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>C(O)NHCH(CH<sub>3</sub>)φ,

25

-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>C(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>-4-dimethylaminophenyl,

-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>C(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>-4-nitrophenyl,

45

-CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-4-[-NHC(O)CH<sub>3</sub>-phenyl],

-CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-4-pyridyl,

-CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-4-[dimethylaminophenyl],

30

-CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-3-methoxyphenyl,

50

-CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-4-chlorophenyl,

55

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

-CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-2-pyridyl,  
-CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-4-methoxyphenyl,  
-CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-3-pyridyl,  
4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O-]benzyl,  
5 -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>NHC(NH)NH-SO<sub>2</sub>-4-methylphenyl,  
4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O-]benzyl,  
-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NHC(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>,  
-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NHC(O)NH-phenyl,  
-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NHC(O)NH-4-methoxyphenyl,  
10 4-[4'-pyridyl-C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[3'-pyridyl-C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)NH-3'-methylphenyl]benzyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)CH<sub>2</sub>NHC(O)NH-3'-methylphenyl]benzyl,  
25 4-[-NHC(O)-(2',3'-dihydroindol-2-yl)]benzyl,  
15 4-[-NHC(O)-(2',3'-dihydro-N-Boc-indol-2-yl)]benzyl,  
p-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-1'-(4'-pyrimidinyl)-piperazinyl]benzyl,  
4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-(1'-piperidinyl)]benzyl,  
4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-(1'-pyrrolidinyl)]benzyl,  
4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-(1'-piperidinyl)]benzyl-,  
20 -CH<sub>2</sub>-3-(1,2,4-triazolyl),  
4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-4-(3'-chlorophenyl)-piperazin-1-yl]benzyl,  
4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>N(φ)CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>]benzyl,  
4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>-3'-(N-Boc)-piperidinyl]benzyl,  
4-[di-*n*-pentylamino]benzyl,  
25 4-[*n*-pentylamino]benzyl,  
4-[di-*iso*-propylamino-CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O-]benzyl,  
4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-(N-morpholinyl)]benzyl,  
4-[-O-(3'-(N-Boc)-piperidinyl)]benzyl,  
4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH(NHBoc)CH<sub>2</sub>cyclohexyl]benzyl,  
30 *p*-[OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-(N-piperidinyl)]benzyl,  
4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-(4-*m*-chlorophenyl)-piperazin-1-yl]benzyl,

4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-(N-homopiperidiny)]benzyl,  
 4-[-NHC(O)-3'-(N-Boc)-piperidiny]]benzyl,  
 4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>N(benzyl)<sub>2</sub>]benzyl,  
 -CH<sub>2</sub>-2-thiazolyl,  
 3-hydroxybenzyl,  
 4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>N(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>]benzyl,  
 4-[-NHC(S)NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-(N-morpholino)]benzyl,  
 4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>N(C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>)<sub>2</sub>]benzyl,  
 4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>N(C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>)<sub>2</sub>]benzyl,  
 4-[CH<sub>3</sub>(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NH-]benzyl,  
 4-[N-*n*-butyl,N-*n*-pentylamino-]benzyl,  
 4-[-NHC(O)-4'-piperidiny]]benzyl,  
 4-[-NHC(O)CH(NHBoc)(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NHCbz]benzyl,  
 4-[-NHC(O)-(1',2',3',4'-tetrahydro-N-Boc-isoquinolin-1'-yl)]benzyl,  
 p-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-1'-(4'-methyl)-piperaziny]]benzyl,  
 -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NH-Boc,  
 3-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>N(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>]benzyl,  
 4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>N(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>]benzyl,  
 3-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-(1'-pyrrolidiny)]benzyl,  
 4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>N(CH<sub>3</sub>)benzyl]benzyl,  
 4-[-NHC(S)NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-(N-morpholino)]benzyl,  
 4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-(N-morpholino)]benzyl,  
 4-[-NHCH<sub>2</sub>-(4'-chlorophenyl)]benzyl,  
 4-[-NHC(O)NH-(4'-cyanophenyl)]benzyl,  
 4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>COOH]benzyl,  
 4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>COO-*t*-butyl]benzyl,  
 4-[-NHC(O)-5'-fluoroindol-2-yl]benzyl,  
 4-[-NHC(S)NH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>-1-piperidiny]]benzyl,  
 4-[-N(SO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>)(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>-N(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>]benzyl,  
 4-[-NHC(O)CH<sub>2</sub>CH(C(O)OCH<sub>2</sub>φ)-NHCbz]benzyl,  
 4-[-NHS(O)<sub>2</sub>CF<sub>3</sub>]benzyl,

5

3-[-O-(N-methylpiperidin-4'-yl)]benzyl,

4-[-C(=NH)NH<sub>2</sub>]benzyl,

10

4-[-NHSO<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>Cl]benzyl,

4-[-NHC(O)-(1',2',3',4'-tetrahydroisoquinolin-2'-yl)]benzyl,

5

4-[-NHC(S)NH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>-N-morpholino]benzyl,4-[-NHC(O)CH(CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>)NHBoc]benzyl,

15

4-[-C(O)NH<sub>2</sub>]benzyl,

4-[-NHC(O)NH-3'-methoxyphenyl]benzyl,

4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-indol-3'-yl]benzyl,

20

10

4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-benzyl]benzyl,4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>C(O)O-benzyl]benzyl,4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>C(O)OH]benzyl,4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>-2'-(4',5'-dihydro)imidazolyl]benzyl,

25

-CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>-(4-dimethylamino)phenyl,

15

-CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>-(4-dimethylamino)phenyl,4-[-NHC(O)-L-2'-pyrrolidinyl-N-SO<sub>2</sub>-4'-methylphenyl]benzyl,

30

4-[-NHC(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>]benzyl,

4-aminobenzyl]benzyl,

4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-1-(4-hydroxy-4-(3-methoxypyrrol-2-yl))-

35

20

piperazinyl]benzyl,

4-[-O-(N-methylpiperidin-4'-yl)]benzyl,

3-methoxybenzyl,

4-[-NHC(O)-piperidin-3'-yl]benzyl,

40

4-[-NHC(O)-pyridin-2'-yl]benzyl,

25

4-[-NHCH<sub>2</sub>-(4'-chlorophenyl)]benzyl,4-[-NHC(O)-(N-(4'-CH<sub>3</sub>-φ-SO<sub>2</sub>)-L-pyrrolidin-2'-yl)]benzyl,

45

4-[-NHC(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-φ]benzyl,4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH<sub>2</sub>]benzyl,4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-*t*-butyl]benzyl,

30

4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-1-(4-hydroxy-4-phenyl)-piperidinyl]benzyl,

50

4-[-NHSO<sub>2</sub>-CH=CH<sub>2</sub>]benzyl,

55

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

- 4-[-NHSO<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>Cl]benzyl,  
-CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>N(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>,  
4-[(1'-Cbz-piperidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[(1'-Boc-piperidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
5 4-[(2'-bromophenyl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)-pyridin-4'-yl]benzyl,  
4-[(4'-(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NC(O)O-)phenyl]-C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)-1'-methylpiperidin-4'-yl-]benzyl,  
4-(dimethylamino)benzyl,  
10 4-[-NHC(O)-(1'-N-Boc)-piperidin-2'-yl]benzyl,  
3-[-NHC(O)-pyridin-4'-yl]benzyl,  
4-[(*tert*-butyl-O(O)CCH<sub>2</sub>-O-benzyl)-NH-]benzyl,  
[BocNHCH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-]butyl,  
4-benzylbenzyl,  
15 2-hydroxyethyl,  
4-[(Et)<sub>2</sub>NCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>NHC(S)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[(1'-Boc-4'-hydroxypyrrolidin-2'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[φCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>NHC(S)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[(perhydroindolin-2'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
20 2-[4-hydroxy-4-(3-methoxythien-2-yl)piperidin-1-yl]ethyl,  
4-[(1'-Boc-perhydroindolin-2'-yl)-C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[*N*-3-methylbutyl-*N*-trifluoromethanesulfonyl]amino]benzyl,  
4-[*N*-vinylsulfonyl]amino]benzyl,  
4-[2-(2-azabicyclo[3.2.2]octan-2-yl)ethyl-O-]benzyl,  
25 4-[4'-hydroxypyrrolidin-2'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-(φNHC(S)NH)benzyl,  
4-(EtNHC(S)NH)benzyl,  
4-(φCH<sub>2</sub>NHC(S)NH)benzyl,  
3-[(1'-Boc-piperidin-2'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
30 3-[piperidin-2'-yl-C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[(3'-Boc-thiazolidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

- 4-(pyridin-3'-yl-NHC(S)NH)benzyl,  
4-(CH<sub>3</sub>-NHC(S)NH)benzyl,  
4-(H<sub>2</sub>NCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH)benzyl,  
4-(BocHNCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH)benzyl,  
5 4-(pyridin-4'-yl-CH<sub>2</sub>NH)benzyl,  
4-[(*N,N*-di(4-*N,N*-dimethylamino)benzyl)amino]benzyl,  
4-[(1-Cbz-piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]butyl,  
4-[φCH<sub>2</sub>OCH<sub>2</sub>(BocHN)CHC(O)NH]benzyl,  
4-[(piperidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
10 4-[(pyrrolidin-2'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-(pyridin-3'-yl-C(O)NH)butyl,  
4-(pyridin-4'-yl-C(O)NH)butyl,  
4-(pyridin-3'-yl-C(O)NH)benzyl,  
25 4-[CH<sub>3</sub>NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
15 4-[CH<sub>3</sub>N(Boc)CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-(aminomethyl)benzyl,  
4-[φCH<sub>2</sub>OCH<sub>2</sub>(H<sub>2</sub>N)CHC(O)NH]benzyl,  
4-[(1',4'-di(Boc)piperazin-2'-yl)-C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[(piperazin-2'-yl)-C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
20 4-[(*N*-toluenesulfonylpyrrolidin-2'-yl)C(O)NH-]butyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)-4'-piperidinyl]butyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)-1'-*N*-Boc-piperidin-2'-yl]benzyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)-piperidin-2'-yl]benzyl,  
4-[(1'-*N*-Boc-2',3'-dihydroindolin-2'-yl)-C(O)NH]benzyl,  
25 4-(pyridin-3'-yl-CH<sub>2</sub>NH)benzyl,  
4-[(1'-Cbz-piperidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[(piperidin-1'-yl)C(O)CH<sub>2</sub>-O-]benzyl,  
4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>CH)<sub>2</sub>NC(O)CH<sub>2</sub>-O-]benzyl,  
4-[HO(O)C(Cbz-NH)CHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
30 4-[φCH<sub>2</sub>O(O)C(Cbz-NH)CHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)-2'-methoxyphenyl]benzyl,

5 4-[(pyrazin-2'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[HO(O)C(NH<sub>2</sub>)CHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
10 4-(2'-formyl-1',2',3',4'-tetrahydroisoquinolin-3'-yl-CH<sub>2</sub>NH-)benzyl,  
N-Cbz-NHCH<sub>2</sub>-,  
5 4-[(4'-methylpiperazin-1'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,  
4-[CH<sub>3</sub>(N-Boc)NCH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
15 4-[-NHC(O)-(1',2',3',4'-tetrahydro-N-Boc-isoquinolin-3'-yl)-]benzyl,  
4-[CH<sub>3</sub>NHCH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NC(O)CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
20 10 4-(N-methylacetamido)benzyl,  
4-(1',2',3',4'-tetrahydroisoquinolin-3'-yl-CH<sub>2</sub>NH-)benzyl,  
4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NHCH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
(1-toluenesulfonylimidazol-4-yl)methyl,  
25 4-[(1'-Boc-piperidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
15 4-trifluoromethylbenzyl,  
4-[(2'-bromophenyl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
30 4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NC(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[CH<sub>3</sub>OC(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NC(O)O-]benzyl,  
20 4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NC(O)N(CH<sub>3</sub>-)]benzyl,  
35 4-[CH<sub>3</sub>OC(O)N(CH<sub>3</sub>-)]benzyl,  
4-(N-methyltrifluoroacetamido)benzyl,  
4-[(1'-methoxycarbonylpiperidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
40 4-[(4'-phenylpiperidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
25 4-[(4'-phenyl-1'-Boc-piperidin-4'-yl)-C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[(piperidin-4'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl, 4-[(1'-methylpiperidin-4'-yl)-  
45 O-]benzyl,  
4-[(1'-methylpiperidin-4'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,  
4-[(4'-methylpiperazin-1'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
30 3-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NC(O)O-]benzyl,  
50 4-[(4'-phenyl-1'-Boc-piperidin-4'-yl)-C(O)O-]benzyl,



4-(*N*-toluenesulfonylamino)benzyl,  
4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>CC(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[(morpholin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NC(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[-C(O)NH-(4'-piperidinyl)]benzyl,  
4-[(2'-trifluoromethylphenyl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[(2'-methylphenyl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NS(O)<sub>2</sub>O-]benzyl,  
4-[(pyrrolidin-2'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)-piperidin-1'-yl]benzyl,  
4-[(thiomorpholin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[(thiomorpholin-4'-yl sulfone)-C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[(morpholin-4'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,  
3-nitro-4-(CH<sub>3</sub>OC(O)CH<sub>2</sub>O-)benzyl,  
(2-benzoxazolinon-6-yl)methyl-,  
(2*H*-1,4-benzoxazin-3(4*H*)-one-7-yl)methyl-,  
4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NS(O)<sub>2</sub>NH-]benzyl,  
4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NS(O)<sub>2</sub>N(CH<sub>3</sub>)-]benzyl,  
4-[(thiomorpholin-4'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,  
4-[(thiomorpholin-4'-yl sulfone)-C(O)O-]benzyl,  
4-[(piperidin-1'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,  
4-[(pyrrolidin-1'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,  
4-[(4'-methylpiperazin-1'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,  
4-[(2'-methylpyrrolidin-1'-yl)-,  
(pyridin-4-yl)methyl-,  
4-[(piperazin-4'-yl)-C(O)O-]benzyl,  
4-[(1'-Boc-piperazin-4'-yl)-C(O)O-]benzyl,  
4-[(4'-acetyl piperazin-1'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,  
*p*-[(4'-methanesulfonylpiperazin-1'-yl)-benzyl,  
3-nitro-4-[(morpholin-4'-yl)-C(O)O-]benzyl,  
4-[[CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NC(S)]<sub>2</sub>N-}benzyl,

*N*-Boc-2-aminoethyl-,  
 4-[(1,1-dioxothiomorpholin-4-yl)-C(O)O-]benzyl,  
 4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NS(O)<sub>2</sub>-]benzyl,  
 4-(imidazolid-2'-one-1'-yl)benzyl,  
 4-[(piperidin-1'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,  
 1-*N*-benzyl-imidazol-4-yl-CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
 3,4-dioxyethylenebenzyl,  
 3,4-dioxymethylenebenzyl,  
 4-[N(SO<sub>2</sub>)(CH<sub>3</sub>)CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>N(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>]benzyl,  
 4-(3'-formylimidazolid-2'-one-1'-yl)benzyl,  
 4-[NHC(O)CH(CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>)NHBoc]benzyl,  
 [2'-[4"-hydroxy-4"-(3'''-methoxythien-2'''-yl)piperidin-2"-  
 yl]ethoxy]benzyl, and  
*p*-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>N(CH<sub>3</sub>)C(O)O-]benzyl.

13. The compound according to Claim 2 wherein R<sup>6</sup> is selected from the group consisting of 2,4-dioxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl (3,4-enol), methoxy, ethoxy, *iso*-propoxy, *n*-butoxy, *t*-butoxy, cyclopentoxy, *neo*-pentoxy, 2-*α*-*iso*-propyl-4-β-methylcyclohexoxy, 2-β-isopropyl-4-β-methylcyclohexoxy, -NH<sub>2</sub>, benzyloxy, -NHCH<sub>2</sub>COOH, -NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>COOH, -NH-adamantyl, -NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>COOCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>, -NHSO<sub>2</sub>-*p*-CH<sub>3</sub>-φ, -NHOR<sup>8</sup> where R<sup>8</sup> is hydrogen, methyl, *iso*-propyl or benzyl, O-(*N*-succinimidyl), -O-cholest-5-en-3-β-yl, -OCH<sub>2</sub>-OC(O)C(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>, -O(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>z</sub>NHC(O)W where *z* is 1 or 2 and W is selected from the group consisting of pyrid-3-yl, *N*-methylpyridyl, and *N*-methyl-1,4-dihydro-pyrid-3-yl, -NR''C(O)-R' where R' is aryl, heteroaryl or heterocyclic and R'' is hydrogen or -CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>.

14. A compound selected from the group consisting of:  
*N*-[*N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-pyrrolidin-2-ylmethyl]-L-phenylalanine  
*N*-[*N*-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolinyl]-L-hydroxy-L-phenylalanine

N-[N-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-prolinyl]-N-hydroxy-D-phenylalanine

N-[2-(N-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-pyrrolidinyl)-2-hydroxyacetyl]-L-4-(N-benzyloxycarbonyl-isonipecotamido)phenylalanine

N-[2-(N-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)-L-pyrrolidinyl)-2-hydroxyacetyl]-L-4-(isonipecotamido)phenylalanine

(2S)-2-[5-(N-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)tetrazol-1-yl]-2-(4-nitrobenzyl)propionic acid

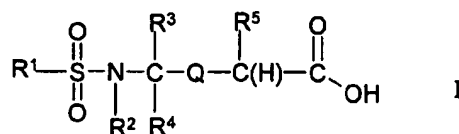
(2S)-2-[5-(N-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)tetrazol-1-yl]-2-(4-(N-*tert*-butoxycarbonylisonipecotamido)benzyl)propionic acid methyl ester

(2S)-2-[5-(N-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl)tetrazol-1-yl]-2-(4-(N-*tert*-butoxycarbonylisonipecotamido)benzyl)propionic acid

N-[N-(toluene-4-sulfonyl)pyrrolidin-2-yl]aminocarbonyl]-L-phenylalanine

and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof as well as any of the ester compounds recited above wherein one ester is replaced with another ester selected from the group consisting of methyl ester, ethyl ester, *n*-propyl ester, isopropyl ester, *n*-butyl ester, isobutyl ester, *sec*-butyl ester and *tert*-butyl ester.

15. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of formula I:



wherein

R<sup>1</sup> is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, substituted cycloalkenyl,

aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic and substituted heterocyclic,;

R<sup>2</sup> is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, substituted cycloalkenyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, and R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> together with the nitrogen atom bound to R<sup>2</sup> and the SO<sub>2</sub> group can form a heterocyclic or a substituted heterocyclic group;

R<sup>3</sup> is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, substituted cycloalkenyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, and, when R<sup>2</sup> does not form a heterocyclic group with R<sup>1</sup>, R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> together with the nitrogen atom bound to R<sup>2</sup> and the carbon atom bound to R<sup>3</sup> can form a heterocyclic group or a substituted heterocyclic group;

R<sup>4</sup> is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, substituted cycloalkenyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, and, when R<sup>3</sup> does not form a heterocyclic or a substituted heterocyclic group with R<sup>2</sup>, then R<sup>3</sup> and R<sup>4</sup> together with the carbon atom to which they are attached can form a cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclic or substituted heterocyclic group;

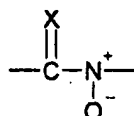
R<sup>5</sup> is selected from the group consisting of isopropyl, -CH<sub>2</sub>-W and =CH-W, where W is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, alkoxy, substituted alkoxy, aryl, substituted aryl, aryloxy, substituted aryloxy, aryloxyaryl, substituted aryloxyaryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, acylamino, carboxyl, carboxylalkyl, carboxyl-substituted alkyl, carboxyl-cycloalkyl, carboxyl-substituted cycloalkyl, carboxylaryl, carboxyl-substituted aryl, carboxylheteroaryl, carboxyl-

-137-

substituted heteroaryl, carboxyheterocyclic, carboxy-substituted heterocyclic, and hydroxyl with the proviso that when R<sup>5</sup> is =CH-W then (H) is removed from the formula and W is not hydroxyl;

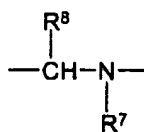
Q is selected from the group consisting of:

(i)



wherein X is selected from the group consisting of oxygen, sulfur and NH;

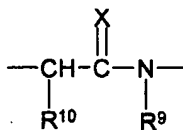
(ii)



wherein R<sup>7</sup> is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl and substituted alkyl;

R<sup>8</sup> is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl and substituted alkyl; or R<sup>7</sup> and R<sup>8</sup> together with the nitrogen atom bound to R<sup>7</sup> and the carbon bound to R<sup>8</sup> can form a heterocyclic or substituted heterocyclic ring;

(iii)

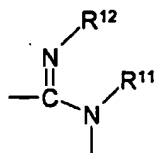


wherein R<sup>9</sup> is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl and substituted alkyl;

-138-

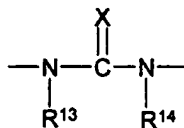
$R^{10}$  is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl and substituted alkyl; or  $R^9$  and  $R^{10}$  together with the nitrogen atom bound to  $R^9$ , the carbon atom bound to  $R^{10}$  and the  $-C(X)-$  group can form a heterocyclic or substituted heterocyclic group;

$X$  is selected from the group consisting of oxygen, sulfur and  $NH$ ;  
(iv)



wherein  $R^{11}$  and  $R^{12}$  together with the nitrogen atom bound to  $R^{11}$  and the  $>C=N-$  group bound to  $R^{12}$  form a heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, heteroaryl, or substituted heteroaryl ring; and

(v)

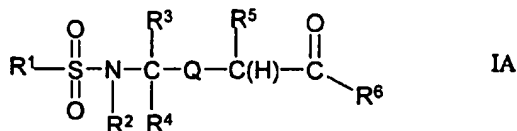


wherein  $R^{13}$  is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and substituted alkyl;

$R^{14}$  is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and substituted alkyl;

$X$  is selected from the group consisting of oxygen, sulfur and  $NH$ ;  
and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

16. A pharmaceutical composition comprising a pharmaceutically acceptable carrier and a therapeutically effective amount of a compound of formula IA:



wherein

$\text{R}^1$  is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, substituted cycloalkenyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic and substituted heterocyclic,;

$\text{R}^2$  is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, substituted cycloalkenyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, and  $\text{R}^1$  and  $\text{R}^2$  together with the nitrogen atom bound to  $\text{R}^2$  and the  $\text{SO}_2$  group can form a heterocyclic or a substituted heterocyclic group;

$\text{R}^3$  is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, substituted cycloalkenyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, and, when  $\text{R}^2$  does not form a heterocyclic group with  $\text{R}^1$ ,  $\text{R}^2$  and  $\text{R}^3$  together with the nitrogen atom bound to  $\text{R}^2$  and the carbon atom bound to  $\text{R}^3$  can form a heterocyclic group or a substituted heterocyclic group;

$\text{R}^4$  is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, cycloalkenyl, substituted cycloalkenyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, and, when  $\text{R}^3$  does not form a heterocyclic or a substituted heterocyclic group with  $\text{R}^2$ , then  $\text{R}^3$  and  $\text{R}^4$  together with the carbon atom to which they are attached can form a

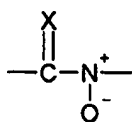
cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, heterocyclic or substituted heterocyclic group;

$R^5$  is selected from the group consisting of isopropyl,  $-CH_2-W$  and  $=CH-W$ , where  $W$  is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, cycloalkyl, substituted cycloalkyl, alkoxy, substituted alkoxy, aryl, substituted aryl, aryloxy, substituted aryloxy, aryloxyaryl, substituted aryloxyaryl, heteroaryl, substituted heteroaryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, acylamino, carboxyl, carboxylalkyl, carboxyl-substituted alkyl, carboxyl-cycloalkyl, carboxyl-substituted cycloalkyl, carboxylaryl, carboxyl-substituted aryl, carboxylheteroaryl, carboxyl-substituted heteroaryl, carboxyheterocyclic, carboxy-substituted heterocyclic, and hydroxyl with the proviso that when  $R^5$  is  $=CH-W$  then (H) is removed from the formula and  $W$  is not hydroxyl;

$R^6$  is selected from the group consisting of amino, alkoxy, substituted alkoxy, cycloalkoxy, substituted cycloalkoxy, aryloxy, substituted aryloxy, heteroaryloxy, substituted heteroaryloxy, heterocyclyloxy, substituted heterocyclyloxy,  $-NHOY$  where  $Y$  is hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, or substituted aryl, and  $-NH(CH_2)_pCOOY'$  where  $Y'$  is hydrogen, alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, or substituted aryl, and  $p$  is an integer of from 1 to 8;

$Q$  is selected from the group consisting of:

(i)

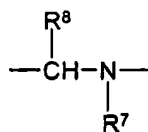


wherein  $X$  is selected from the group consisting of oxygen, sulfur and NH;



--141--

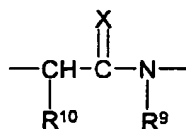
(ii)



wherein R<sup>7</sup> is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl and substituted alkyl;

R<sup>8</sup> is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl and substituted alkyl; or R<sup>7</sup> and R<sup>8</sup> together with the nitrogen atom bound to R<sup>7</sup> and the carbon bound to R<sup>8</sup> can form a heterocyclic or substituted heterocyclic ring;

(iii)

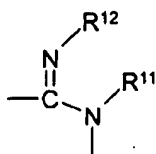


wherein R<sup>9</sup> is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl and substituted alkyl;

R<sup>10</sup> is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl and substituted alkyl; or R<sup>9</sup> and R<sup>10</sup> together with the nitrogen atom bound to R<sup>9</sup>, the carbon atom bound to R<sup>10</sup> and the -C(X)- group can form a heterocyclic or substituted heterocyclic group;

X is selected from the group consisting of oxygen, sulfur and NH; and

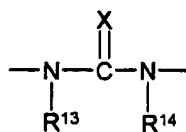
(iv)



--142--

wherein R<sup>11</sup> and R<sup>12</sup> together with the nitrogen atom bound to R<sup>11</sup> and the >C=N- group bound to R<sup>12</sup> form a heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, heteroaryl, or substituted heteroaryl ring; and

(v)



wherein R<sup>13</sup> is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and substituted alkyl;

R<sup>14</sup> is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, alkyl, and substituted alkyl;

X is selected from the group consisting of oxygen, sulfur and NH; and pharmaceutically acceptable salts thereof.

17. The pharmaceutical composition according to Claims 15 or 16 wherein R<sup>1</sup> is selected from the group consisting of alkyl, substituted alkyl, aryl, substituted aryl, heterocyclic, substituted heterocyclic, heteroaryl and substituted heteroaryl.

18. The pharmaceutical composition according to Claims 15 or 16 wherein R<sup>1</sup> is selected from the group consisting of methyl, isopropyl, *n*-butyl, benzyl, phenethyl, phenyl, 4-methylphenyl, 4-*t*-butylphenyl, 2,4,6-trimethylphenyl, 2-fluorophenyl, 3-fluorophenyl, 4-fluorophenyl, 2,4-difluorophenyl, 3,4-difluorophenyl, 3,5-difluorophenyl, 2-chlorophenyl, 3-chlorophenyl, 4-chlorophenyl, 3,4-dichlorophenyl, 3,5-dichlorophenyl, 3-chloro-4-fluorophenyl, 4-bromophenyl, 2-methoxyphenyl, 3-methoxyphenyl, 4-methoxyphenyl, 3,4-dimethoxyphenyl, 4-*t*-butoxyphenyl, 4-(3'-dimethylamino-*n*-propoxy)-phenyl, 2-carboxyphenyl, 2-(methoxycarbonyl)phenyl, 4-(H<sub>2</sub>NC(O)-)phenyl, 4-(H<sub>2</sub>NC(S)-)phenyl, 4-

5  
cyanophenyl, 4-trifluoromethylphenyl, 4-trifluoromethoxyphenyl, 3,5-di-  
(trifluoromethyl)phenyl, 4-nitrophenyl, 4-aminophenyl,  
10 4-(CH<sub>3</sub>C(O)NH-)phenyl, 4-(PhNHC(O)NH-)phenyl, 4-amidinophenyl, 4-  
methylamidinophenyl, 4-(CH<sub>3</sub>SC(=NH)-)phenyl, 4-chloro-3-  
5 (H<sub>2</sub>NS(O)<sub>2</sub>-)phenyl, 1-naphthyl, 2-naphthyl, pyridin-2-yl, pyridin-3-yl,  
pyrimidin-2-yl, quinolin-8-yl, 2-(trifluoroacetyl)-1,2,3,4-  
15 tetrahydroisoquinolin-7-yl, morpholin-4-yl, 2-thienyl, 5-chloro-2-thienyl,  
2,5-dichloro-4-thienyl, 1-N-methylimidazol-4-yl, 1-N-methylpyrazol-3-yl, 1-  
N-methylpyrazol-4-yl, 1-N-butylpyrazol-4-yl, 1-N-methyl-3-methyl-5-  
20 chloropyrazol-4-yl, 1-N-methyl-5-methyl-3-chloropyrazol-4-yl, 2-thiazolyl  
and 5-methyl-1,3,4-thiadiazol-2-yl.

25 19. The pharmaceutical composition according to Claims 15 or 16  
wherein R<sup>2</sup> is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, methyl,  
15 phenyl, benzyl, -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>-2-thienyl, and -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>-φ.

30 20. The pharmaceutical composition according to Claims 15 or 16  
wherein R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> together with the nitrogen atom bound to R<sup>2</sup> substituent  
and the carbon bound to the R<sup>3</sup> substituent form a heterocyclic group or a  
20 substituted heterocyclic group.

35 21. The pharmaceutical composition according to Claim 20 wherein  
R<sup>2</sup> and R<sup>3</sup> together with the nitrogen atom bound to R<sup>2</sup> substituent and the  
40 carbon bound to the R<sup>3</sup> substituent form a substituted heterocyclic ring.

25 22. The pharmaceutical composition according to Claims 15 or 16  
wherein R<sup>1</sup> and R<sup>2</sup> together with the nitrogen atom bound to R<sup>2</sup> and the SO<sub>2</sub>  
45 group bound to R<sup>1</sup> are joined to form a heterocyclic ring or a substituted  
heterocyclic ring.  
30

23. The pharmaceutical composition according to Claims 15 or 16 wherein R<sup>3</sup> is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, methyl, phenyl, benzyl, diphenylmethyl, 2-carboxyethyl, 2-amidoethyl, *iso*-butyl, *t*-butyl, carboxymethyl, -CH<sub>2</sub>O-benzyl and hydroxymethyl.

24. The pharmaceutical composition according to Claim 15 or 16 wherein R<sup>4</sup> is selected from the group consisting of hydrogen, methyl, ethyl and phenyl.

25. The pharmaceutical composition according to Claims 15 or 16 wherein Q is selected from the group consisting of -C(O)N(O)-, -CH<sub>2</sub>NH-, -CH(OH)C(O)NH-, -NHC(O)NH- and tetrazol-1,5-diyl.

26. The pharmaceutical composition according to Claims 15 or 16 wherein R<sup>5</sup> is selected from the group consisting of

4-methylbenzyl,  
4-hydroxybenzyl,  
4-methoxybenzyl,  
4-*t*-butoxybenzyl,  
4-benzyloxybenzyl,  
4-[ $\phi$ -CH(CH<sub>3</sub>)O-]benzyl,  
4-[ $\phi$ -CH(COOH)O-]benzyl,  
4-[BocNHCH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-chlorobenzyl,  
4-[NH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-carboxybenzyl,  
4-[CbzNHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>NH-]benzyl,  
3-hydroxy-4-( $\phi$ -OC(O)NH-)benzyl,  
4-[HOOCCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
benzyl,  
4-[2'-carboxylphenoxy-]benzyl,

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

5

10

15

20

25

30

4-[ $\phi$ -C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
3-carboxybenzyl,  
4-iodobenzyl,  
4-hydroxy-3,5-diiodobenzyl,  
4-hydroxy-3-iodobenzyl,  
4-[2'-carboxyphenyl-]benzyl,  
 $\phi$ -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
4-nitrobenzyl,  
2-carboxybenzyl,  
4-[dibenzylamino]-benzyl,  
4-[(1'-cyclopropyl)piperidin-4'-yl]C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)CH<sub>2</sub>NHBoc]benzyl,  
4-carboxybenzyl,  
4-hydroxy-3-nitrobenzyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)CH(CH<sub>3</sub>)NHBoc]benzyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)CH(CH<sub>2</sub> $\phi$ )NHBoc]benzyl,  
isobutyl,  
methyl,  
4-[CH<sub>3</sub>C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
-CH<sub>2</sub>-(3-indolyl),  
*n*-butyl,  
*t*-butyl-OC(O)CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
*t*-butyl-OC(O)CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
H<sub>2</sub>NC(O)CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
H<sub>2</sub>NC(O)CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
BocNH-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,  
*t*-butyl-OC(O)-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>-,  
HOOCCH<sub>2</sub>-,  
HOOC(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>-,  
H<sub>2</sub>N(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,  
isopropyl,

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

5

10

15

20

25

30

(1-naphthyl)-CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
(2-naphthyl)-CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
(2-thiophenyl)-CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
( $\phi$ -CH<sub>2</sub>-OC(O)NH-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,  
cyclohexyl-CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
benzyloxy-CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
HOCH<sub>2</sub>-,  
5-(3-N-benzyl)imidazolyl-CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
2-pyridyl-CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
3-pyridyl-CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
4-pyridyl-CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
5-(3-N-methyl)imidazolyl-CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
N-benzylpiperid-4-yl-CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
N-Boc-piperidin-4-yl-CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
N-(phenyl-carbonyl)piperidin-4-yl-CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
H<sub>3</sub>CSCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
1-N-benzylimidazol-4-yl-CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
*iso*-propyl-C(O)NH-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,  
*iso*-butyl-C(O)NH-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,  
phenyl-C(O)NH-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,  
benzyl-C(O)NH-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,  
allyl-C(O)NH-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,  
4-(3-N-methylimidazolyl)-CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
4-imidazolyl-,  
4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-O]-benzyl-,  
4-[(benzyl)<sub>2</sub>N-]-benzyl-,  
4-aminobenzyl-,  
allyloxy-C(O)NH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,  
allyloxy-C(O)NH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>-,  
allyloxy-C(O)NH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>-,  
NH<sub>2</sub>C(O)CH<sub>2</sub>-,

$\phi$ -CH=,

2-pyridyl-C(O)NH-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,

4-methylpyrid-3-yl-C(O)NH-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,

3-methylthien-2-yl-C(O)NH-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,

2-pyrrolyl-C(O)NH-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,

2-furanyl-C(O)NH-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,

4-methylphenyl-SO<sub>2</sub>-N(CH<sub>3</sub>)CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,

4-[cyclopentylacetylenyl]-benzyl,

4-[-NHC(O)-(N-Boc)-pyrrolidin-2-yl]-benzyl-,

1-N-methylimidazol-4-yl-CH<sub>2</sub>-,

1-N-methylimidazol-5-yl-CH<sub>2</sub>-,

imidazol-5-yl-CH<sub>2</sub>-,

6-methylpyrid-3-yl-C(O)NH-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>-,

4-[2'-carboxymethylphenyl]-benzyl,

4-[-NHC(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>- $\phi$ ]-benzyl,

4-[-NHC(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>- $\phi$ ]-benzyl,

-CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub> $\phi$ ,

4-[ $\phi$ (CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>O]-benzyl,

4-[-C $\equiv$ C- $\phi$ -4' $\phi$ ]-benzyl,

4-[-C $\equiv$ C-CH<sub>2</sub>-O-S(O)<sub>2</sub>-4'-CH<sub>3</sub>- $\phi$ ]-benzyl,

4-[-C $\equiv$ C-CH<sub>2</sub>NHC(O)NH<sub>2</sub>]-benzyl,

4-[-C $\equiv$ C-CH<sub>2</sub>-O-4'-COOCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>- $\phi$ ]-benzyl,

4-[-C $\equiv$ C-CH(NH<sub>2</sub>)-cyclohexyl]-benzyl,

-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NHC(O)CH<sub>2</sub>-3-indolyl,

-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NHC(O)CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-3-indolyl,

-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NHC(O)-3-(5-methoxyindolyl),

-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NHC(O)-3-(1-methylindolyl),

-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NHC(O)-4-(-SO<sub>2</sub>(CH<sub>3</sub>)- $\phi$ ),

-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NHC(O)-4-(C(O)CH<sub>3</sub>)-phenyl,

-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NHC(O)-4-fluorophenyl,

-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NHC(O)CH<sub>2</sub>O-4-fluorophenyl,

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

5

10

15

20

25

30

4-[-C≡C-(2-pyridyl)]benzyl,  
 4-[-C≡C-CH<sub>2</sub>-O-phenyl]benzyl,  
 4-[-C≡C-CH<sub>2</sub>OCH<sub>3</sub>]benzyl,  
 4-[-C≡C-(3-hydroxyphenyl)]benzyl,  
 4-[-C≡C-CH<sub>2</sub>-O-4'-(C(O)OC<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>)phenyl]benzyl,  
 4-[-C≡C-CH<sub>2</sub>CH(C(O)OCH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>]benzyl,  
 4-[-C≡C-CH<sub>2</sub>NH-(4,5-dihydro-4-oxo-5-phenyl-oxazol-2-yl),  
 3-aminobenzyl,  
 4-[-C≡C-CH<sub>2</sub>CH(NHC(O)CH<sub>3</sub>)C(O)OH]-benzyl,  
 -CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NHCH(CH<sub>3</sub>)φ,  
 -CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>-(4-dimethylamino)-φ,  
 -CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>-4-nitrophenyl,  
 -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)N(CH<sub>3</sub>)CH<sub>2</sub>-φ,  
 -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-(N-methyl)-2-pyrrolyl,  
 -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>,  
 -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-3-indolyl,  
 -CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)N(CH<sub>3</sub>)CH<sub>2</sub>phenyl,  
 -CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>-(N-methyl)-2-pyrrolyl,  
 -CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>,  
 -CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-3-indolyl,  
 -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>C(O)NHCH(CH<sub>3</sub>)φ,  
 -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>C(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>-4-dimethylaminophenyl,  
 -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>C(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>-4-nitrophenyl,  
 -CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-4-[-NHC(O)CH<sub>3</sub>-phenyl],  
 -CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-4-pyridyl,  
 -CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-4-[dimethylaminophenyl],  
 -CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-3-methoxyphenyl,  
 -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-4-chlorophenyl,  
 -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-2-pyridyl,  
 -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-4-methoxyphenyl,  
 -CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-3-pyridyl,



5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

5

10

15

20

25

30

4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O-]benzyl,  
 -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>NHC(NH)NH-SO<sub>2</sub>-4-methylphenyl,  
 4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O-]benzyl,  
 -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NHC(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>,  
 -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NHC(O)NH-phenyl,  
 -(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NHC(O)NH-4-methoxyphenyl,  
 4-[4'-pyridyl-C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
 4-[3'-pyridyl-C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
 4-[-NHC(O)NH-3'-methylphenyl]benzyl,  
 4-[-NHC(O)CH<sub>2</sub>NHC(O)NH-3'-methylphenyl]benzyl,  
 4-[-NHC(O)-(2',3'-dihydroindol-2-yl)]benzyl,  
 4-[-NHC(O)-(2',3'-dihydro-N-Boc-indol-2-yl)]benzyl,  
 p-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-1'-(4'-pyrimidinyl)-piperaziny]benzyl,  
 4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-(1'-piperidiny)]benzyl,  
 4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-(1'-pyrrolidiny)]benzyl,  
 4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-(1'-piperidiny)]benzyl-,  
 -CH<sub>2</sub>-3-(1,2,4-triazolyl),  
 4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-4-(3'-chlorophenyl)-piperazin-1-yl]benzyl,  
 4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>N(φ)CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>]benzyl,  
 4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>-3'-(N-Boc)-piperidiny]benzyl,  
 4-[di-*n*-pentylamino]benzyl,  
 4-[*n*-pentylamino]benzyl,  
 4-[di-*iso*-propylamino-CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>O-]benzyl,  
 4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-(N-morpholiny)]benzyl,  
 4-[-O-(3'-(N-Boc)-piperidiny)]benzyl,  
 4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH(NHBoc)CH<sub>2</sub>cyclohexyl]benzyl,  
 p-[OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-(N-piperidiny)]benzyl,  
 4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-(4-*m*-chlorophenyl)-piperazin-1-yl]benzyl,  
 4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-(N-homopiperidiny)]benzyl,  
 4-[-NHC(O)-3'-(N-Boc)-piperidiny]benzyl,  
 4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>N(benzyl)<sub>2</sub>]benzyl,

5

-CH<sub>2</sub>-2-thiazolyl,

3-hydroxybenzyl,

10

4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>N(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>]benzyl,4-[-NHC(S)NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-(N-morpholino)]benzyl,

5

4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>N(C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>)<sub>2</sub>]benzyl,4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>N(C<sub>2</sub>H<sub>5</sub>)<sub>2</sub>]benzyl,

15

4-[CH<sub>3</sub>(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NH-]benzyl,4-[N-*n*-butyl,N-*n*-pentylamino-]benzyl,

4-[-NHC(O)-4'-piperidinyll]benzyl,

20

10

4-[-NHC(O)CH(NHBoc)(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NHCbz]benzyl,

4-[-NHC(O)-(1',2',3',4'-tetrahydro-N-Boc-isoquinolin-1'-yl)]benzyl,

p-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-1'-(4'-methyl)-piperazinyll]benzyl,-(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>4</sub>NH-Boc,

25

3-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>N(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>]benzyl,

15

4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>N(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>]benzyl,3-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-(1'-pyrrolidinyll)]benzyl,

30

4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>N(CH<sub>3</sub>)benzyl]benzyl,4-[-NHC(S)NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-(N-morpholino)]benzyl,4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-(N-morpholino)]benzyl,

20

4-[-NHCH<sub>2</sub>-(4'-chlorophenyl)]benzyl,

35

4-[-NHC(O)NH-(4'-cyanophenyl)]benzyl,

4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>COOH]benzyl,4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>COO-*t*-butyl]benzyl,

40

4-[-NHC(O)-5'-fluoroindol-2-yl]benzyl,

25

4-[-NHC(S)NH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>-1-piperidinyll]benzyl,4-[-N(SO<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>)(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>-N(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>]benzyl,

45

4-[-NHC(O)CH<sub>2</sub>CH(C(O)OCH<sub>2</sub>φ)-NHCbz]benzyl,4-[-NHS(O)<sub>2</sub>CF<sub>3</sub>]benzyl,

3-[-O-(N-methylpiperidin-4'-yl)]benzyl,

30

4-[-C(=NH)NH<sub>2</sub>]benzyl,

50

4-[-NHSO<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>Cl]benzyl,

55

4-[-NHC(O)-(1',2',3',4'-tetrahydroisoquinolin-2'-yl)]benzyl,  
4-[-NHC(S)NH(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>3</sub>-N-morpholino]benzyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)CH(CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>)NHBoc]benzyl,  
4-[-C(O)NH<sub>2</sub>]benzyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)NH-3'-methoxyphenyl]benzyl,  
4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-indol-3'-yl]benzyl,  
4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-benzyl]benzyl,  
4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>C(O)O-benzyl]benzyl,  
4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>C(O)OH]benzyl,  
4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>-2'-(4',5'-dihydro)imidazolyl]benzyl,  
-CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>-(4-dimethylamino)phenyl,  
-CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>-(4-dimethylamino)phenyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)-L-2'-pyrrolidinyl-N-SO<sub>2</sub>-4'-methylphenyl]benzyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>]benzyl,  
4-aminobenzyl]benzyl,  
4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-1-(4-hydroxy-4-(3-methoxypyrrol-2-yl)-  
piperazinyl]benzyl,  
4-[-O-(N-methylpiperidin-4'-yl)]benzyl,  
3-methoxybenzyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)-piperidin-3'-yl]benzyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)-pyridin-2'-yl]benzyl,  
4-[-NHCH<sub>2</sub>-(4'-chlorophenyl)]benzyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)-(N-(4'-CH<sub>3</sub>-φ-SO<sub>2</sub>)-L-pyrrolidin-2'-yl)]benzyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-φ]benzyl,  
4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH<sub>2</sub>]benzyl,  
4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-*i*-butyl]benzyl,  
4-[-OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-1-(4-hydroxy-4-phenyl)-piperidinyl]benzyl,  
4-[-NHSO<sub>2</sub>-CH=CH<sub>2</sub>]benzyl,  
4-[-NHSO<sub>2</sub>-CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>Cl]benzyl,  
-CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>N(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>,  
4-[(1'-Cbz-piperidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

5

10

15

20

25

30

4-[(1'-Boc-piperidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[(2'-bromophenyl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)-pyridin-4'-yl]benzyl,  
4-[(4'-(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NC(O)O-)phenyl)-C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)-1'-methylpiperidin-4'-yl-]benzyl,  
4-(dimethylamino)benzyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)-(1'-N-Boc)-piperidin-2'-yl]benzyl,  
3-[-NHC(O)-pyridin-4'-yl]benzyl,  
4-[(*tert*-butyl-O(O)CCH<sub>2</sub>-O-benzyl)-NH-]benzyl,  
[BocNHCH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-]butyl,  
4-benzylbenzyl,  
2-hydroxyethyl,  
4-[(Et)<sub>2</sub>NCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>NHC(S)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[(1'-Boc-4'-hydroxypyrrolidin-2'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[φCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>NHC(S)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[(perhydroindolin-2'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
2-[4-hydroxy-4-(3-methoxythien-2-yl)piperidin-1-yl]ethyl,  
4-[(1'-Boc-perhydroindolin-2'-yl)-C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[*N*-3-methylbutyl-*N*-trifluoromethanesulfonyl]amino]benzyl,  
4-[*N*-vinylsulfonyl]amino]benzyl,  
4-[2-(2-azabicyclo[3.2.2]octan-2-yl)ethyl-O-]benzyl,  
4-[4'-hydroxypyrrolidin-2'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-(φNHC(S)NH)benzyl,  
4-(EtNHC(S)NH)benzyl,  
4-(φCH<sub>2</sub>NHC(S)NH)benzyl,  
3-[(1'-Boc-piperidin-2'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
3-[piperidin-2'-yl-C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[(3'-Boc-thiazolidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-(pyridin-3'-yl-NHC(S)NH)benzyl,  
4-(CH<sub>3</sub>-NHC(S)NH)benzyl,  
4-(H<sub>2</sub>NCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH)benzyl,

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

5

10

15

20

25

30

4-(BocHNCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH)benzyl,  
4-(pyridin-4'-yl-CH<sub>2</sub>NH)benzyl,  
4-[(*N,N*-di(4-*N,N*-dimethylamino)benzyl)amino]benzyl,  
4-[(1-Cbz-piperidin-4-yl)C(O)NH-]butyl,  
4-[φCH<sub>2</sub>OCH<sub>2</sub>(BocHN)CHC(O)NH]benzyl,  
4-[(piperidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[(pyrrolidin-2'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-(pyridin-3'-yl-C(O)NH)butyl,  
4-(pyridin-4'-yl-C(O)NH)butyl,  
4-(pyridin-3'-yl-C(O)NH)benzyl,  
4-[CH<sub>3</sub>NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[CH<sub>3</sub>N(Boc)CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-(aminomethyl)benzyl,  
4-[φCH<sub>2</sub>OCH<sub>2</sub>(H<sub>2</sub>N)CHC(O)NH]benzyl,  
4-[(1',4'-di(Boc)piperazin-2'-yl)-C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[(piperazin-2'-yl)-C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[(*N*-toluenesulfonylpyrrolidin-2'-yl)C(O)NH-]butyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)-4'-piperidinyl]butyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)-1'-*N*-Boc-piperidin-2'-yl]benzyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)-piperidin-2'-yl]benzyl,  
4-[(1'-*N*-Boc-2',3'-dihydroindolin-2'-yl)-C(O)NH]benzyl,  
4-(pyridin-3'-yl-CH<sub>2</sub>NH)benzyl,  
4-[(1'-Cbz-piperidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[(piperidin-1'-yl)C(O)CH<sub>2</sub>-O-]benzyl,  
4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>CH)<sub>2</sub>NC(O)CH<sub>2</sub>-O-]benzyl,  
4-[HO(O)C(Cbz-NH)CHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[φCH<sub>2</sub>O(O)C(Cbz-NH)CHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)-2'-methoxyphenyl]benzyl,  
4-[(pyrazin-2'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[HO(O)C(NH<sub>2</sub>)CHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>-C(O)NH-]benzyl,

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

- 4-(2'-formyl-1',2',3',4'-tetrahydroisoquinolin-3'-yl-CH<sub>2</sub>NH-)benzyl,  
*N*-Cbz-NHCH<sub>2</sub>-,  
 4-[(4'-methylpiperazin-1'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,  
 4-[CH<sub>3</sub>(*N*-Boc)NCH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
 4-[-NHC(O)-(1',2',3',4'-tetrahydro-*N*-Boc-isoquinolin-3'-yl)-]benzyl,  
 4-[CH<sub>3</sub>NHCH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
 (CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NC(O)CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
 4-(*N*-methylacetamido)benzyl,  
 4-(1',2',3',4'-tetrahydroisoquinolin-3'-yl-CH<sub>2</sub>NH-)benzyl,  
 4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NHCH<sub>2</sub>C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
 (1-toluenesulfonylimidizol-4-yl)methyl,  
 4-[(1'-Boc-piperidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
 4-trifluoromethylbenzyl,  
 4-[(2'-bromophenyl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
 4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NC(O)NH-]benzyl,  
 4-[CH<sub>3</sub>OC(O)NH-]benzyl,  
 4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NC(O)O-]benzyl,  
 4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NC(O)N(CH<sub>3</sub>)-]benzyl,  
 4-[CH<sub>3</sub>OC(O)N(CH<sub>3</sub>)-]benzyl,  
 4-(*N*-methyltrifluoroacetamido)benzyl,  
 4-[(1'-methoxycarbonylpiperidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
 4-[(4'-phenylpiperidin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
 4-[(4'-phenyl-1'-Boc-piperidin-4'-yl)-C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
 4-[(piperidin-4'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl, 4-[(1'-methylpiperidin-4'-yl)-  
 O-]benzyl,  
 4-[(1'-methylpiperidin-4'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,  
 4-[(4'-methylpiperazin-1'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
 3-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NC(O)O-]benzyl,  
 4-[(4'-phenyl-1'-Boc-piperidin-4'-yl)-C(O)O-]benzyl,  
 4-(*N*-toluenesulfonylamino)benzyl,  
 4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>CC(O)NH-]benzyl,

5

10

15

20

25

30

35

40

45

50

55

4-[(morpholin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NC(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[-C(O)NH-(4'-piperidiny)]benzyl,  
4-[(2'-trifluoromethylphenyl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
5 4-[(2'-methylphenyl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NS(O)<sub>2</sub>O-]benzyl,  
4-[(pyrrolidin-2'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[-NHC(O)-piperidin-1'-yl]benzyl,  
4-[(thiomorpholin-4'-yl)C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
10 4-[(thiomorpholin-4'-yl sulfone)-C(O)NH-]benzyl,  
4-[(morpholin-4'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,  
3-nitro-4-(CH<sub>3</sub>OC(O)CH<sub>2</sub>O-)benzyl,  
(2-benzoxazolinon-6-yl)methyl-,  
25 (2*H*-1,4-benzoxazin-3(4*H*)-one-7-yl)methyl-,  
15 4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NS(O)<sub>2</sub>NH-]benzyl,  
4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NS(O)<sub>2</sub>N(CH<sub>3</sub>)-]benzyl,  
4-[(thiomorpholin-4'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,  
4-[(thiomorpholin-4'-yl sulfone)-C(O)O-]benzyl,  
4-[(piperidin-1'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,  
20 4-[(pyrrolidin-1'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,  
4-[(4'-methylpiperazin-1'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,  
4-[(2'-methylpyrrolidin-1'-yl)-,  
(pyridin-4-yl)methyl-,  
4-[(piperazin-4'-yl)-C(O)O-]benzyl,  
25 4-[(1'-Boc-piperazin-4'-yl)-C(O)O-]benzyl,  
4-[(4'-acetyl piperazin-1'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,  
*p*-[(4'-methanesulfonylpiperazin-1'-yl)-benzyl,  
3-nitro-4-[(morpholin-4'-yl)-C(O)O-]benzyl,  
4-[[CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NC(S)]<sub>2</sub>N-]benzyl,  
30 *N*-Boc-2-aminoethyl-,  
4-[(1,1-dioxothiomorpholin-4-yl)-C(O)O-]benzyl,

4-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NS(O)<sub>2</sub>-]benzyl,  
 4-(imidazolid-2'-one-1'-yl)benzyl,  
 4-[(piperidin-1'-yl)C(O)O-]benzyl,  
 1-N-benzyl-imidazol-4-yl-CH<sub>2</sub>-,  
 3,4-dioxyethylenebenzyl,  
 3,4-dioxymethylenebenzyl,  
 4-[N(SO<sub>2</sub>)(CH<sub>3</sub>)CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>N(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>]benzyl,  
 4-(3'-formylimidazolid-2'-one-1'-yl)benzyl,  
 4-[NHC(O)CH(CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>NH<sub>2</sub>)NHBoc]benzyl,  
 [2'-[4"-hydroxy-4'''-(3'''-methoxythien-2'''-yl)piperidin-2"-  
 yl]ethoxy]benzyl, and  
*p*-[(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>2</sub>NCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>N(CH<sub>3</sub>)C(O)O-]benzyl.

27. The pharmaceutical composition according to Claim 16 wherein  
 R<sup>6</sup> is selected from the group consisting of 2,4-dioxo-tetrahydrofuran-3-yl  
 (3,4-enol), methoxy, ethoxy, *iso*-propoxy, *n*-butoxy, *t*-butoxy,  
 cyclopentoxy, *neo*-pentoxy, 2- $\alpha$ -*iso*-propyl-4- $\beta$ -methylcyclohexoxy, 2- $\beta$ -  
 isopropyl-4- $\beta$ -methylcyclohexoxy, -NH<sub>2</sub>, benzyloxy, -NHCH<sub>2</sub>COOH, -  
 NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>COOH, -NH-adamantyl, -NHCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>2</sub>COOCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>, -NHSO<sub>2</sub>-*p*-  
 CH<sub>3</sub>- $\phi$ , -NHOR<sup>8</sup> where R<sup>8</sup> is hydrogen, methyl, *iso*-propyl or benzyl, O-(N-  
 succinimidyl), -O-cholest-5-en-3- $\beta$ -yl, -OCH<sub>2</sub>-OC(O)C(CH<sub>3</sub>)<sub>3</sub>, -  
 O(CH<sub>2</sub>)<sub>z</sub>NHC(O)W where *z* is 1 or 2 and W is selected from the group  
 consisting of pyrid-3-yl, N-methylpyridyl, and N-methyl-1,4-dihydro-pyrid-  
 3-yl, -NR''C(O)-R' where R' is aryl, heteroaryl or heterocyclic and R'' is  
 hydrogen or  
 -CH<sub>2</sub>C(O)OCH<sub>2</sub>CH<sub>3</sub>.

28. A method for binding VLA-4 in a biological sample which  
 method comprises contacting the biological sample with a compound of  
 Claim 1 or 2 under conditions wherein said compound binds to VLA-4.



5  
10  
29. A method for treating an inflammatory condition in a mammalian patient which condition is mediated by VLA-4 which method comprises administering to said patient a therapeutically effective amount of a pharmaceutical composition of Claim 15 or 16.

5  
15  
30. The method according to Claim 29 wherein said inflammatory condition is selected from the group consisting of asthma, Alzheimer's disease, atherosclerosis, AIDS dementia, diabetes, inflammatory bowel disease, multiple sclerosis, rheumatoid arthritis, tissue transplantation, tumor  
20 10 metastasis, meningitis, encephalitis, stroke, nephritis, retinitis, atopic dermatitis, psoriasis, myocardial ischemia and acute leukocyte-mediated lung injury.

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No.  
PCT/US 00/01603

## A. CLASSIFICATION OF SUBJECT MATTER

IPC 7 C07K5/06 C07K14/705

According to International Patent Classification (IPC) or to both national classification and IPC

## B. FIELDS SEARCHED

Minimum documentation searched (classification system followed by classification symbols)

IPC 7 C07K

Documentation searched other than minimum documentation to the extent that such documents are included in the fields searched

Electronic data base consulted during the international search (name of data base and, where practical, search terms used)

## C. DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
X	DE 26 55 636 A (MITSUBISHI CHEM IND ;OKAMOTO SHOSUKE (JP)) 23 June 1977 (1977-06-23) claims	1-30
X	EP 0 526 348 A (SANOFI ELF) 3 February 1993 (1993-02-03) Tableau 1, page 27, lines 1 and 2	1-3
Y	WO 92 16549 A (PENTAPHARM AG) 1 October 1992 (1992-10-01) claims	1-30
Y	WO 96 01644 A (THORSETT EUGENE D ;ATHENA NEUROSCIENCES INC (US); PLEISS MICHAEL A) 25 January 1996 (1996-01-25) claims	1-30
	-/--	

☒ Further documents are listed in the continuation of box C.

☒ Patent family members are listed in annex.

## \* Special categories of cited documents:

"A" document defining the general state of the art which is not considered to be of particular relevance

"E" earlier document but published on or after the international filing date

"L" document which may throw doubts on priority claim(s) or which is cited to establish the publication date of another citation or other special reason (as specified)

"O" document referring to an oral disclosure, use, exhibition or other means

"P" document published prior to the international filing date but later than the priority date claimed

"T" later document published after the international filing date or priority date and not in conflict with the application but cited to understand the principle or theory underlying the invention

"X" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered novel or cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is taken alone

"Y" document of particular relevance; the claimed invention cannot be considered to involve an inventive step when the document is combined with one or more other such documents, such combination being obvious to a person skilled in the art.

"Z" document member of the same patent family

Date of the actual completion of the international search

6 June 2000

Date of mailing of the international search report

14/06/2000

Name and mailing address of the ISA

European Patent Office, P.B. 5818 Patentlaan 2  
NL - 2280 HV Rijswijk  
Tel. (+31-70) 340-2040, Tx. 31 651 epo nl,  
Fax: (+31-70) 340-3018

Authorized officer

Kronester-Frei, A

## INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

International Application No.

PCT/US 00/01603

## C.(Continuation) DOCUMENTS CONSIDERED TO BE RELEVANT

Category *	Citation of document, with indication, where appropriate, of the relevant passages	Relevant to claim No.
A	WO 96 22966 A (BIOGEN INC ;ADAMS STEVEN P (US); LIN KO CHUNG (US); LEE WEN CHERNG) 1 August 1996 (1996-08-01) cited in the application claims	1-30
P,X	WO 99 06431 A (LOMBARDO LOUIS JOHN ;SEMKO CHRISTOPHER M (US); THORSETT EUGENE D ( ) 11 February 1999 (1999-02-11) claims, esp. claims 12-37	1-30

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International Application No

PCT/US 00/01603

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
DE 2655636 A	23-06-1977	JP 52113919 A	24-09-1977
		US 4055636 A	25-10-1977
		US 4018915 A	19-04-1977
		US 4018913 A	19-04-1977
		US 4055651 A	25-10-1977
		US 4041156 A	09-08-1977
		US 4046876 A	06-09-1977
		US 4070457 A	24-01-1978
		US 4036955 A	19-07-1977
		US 4073914 A	14-02-1978
		US 4096255 A	20-06-1978
		US 4104392 A	01-08-1978
		BE 849196 A	08-06-1977
		BE 863092 A	19-07-1978
		CA 1102316 A	02-06-1981
		CA 1137469 A	14-12-1982
		CA 1140917 A	08-02-1983
		CH 630349 A	15-06-1982
		CH 630348 A	15-06-1982
		DD 128681 A	07-12-1977
		DK 550576 A,B,	10-06-1977
		FI 763528 A,B,	10-06-1977
		FR 2334349 A	08-07-1977
		FR 2378004 A	18-08-1978
		GR 63103 A	05-09-1979
		LU 76347 A	24-06-1977
		LU 78911 A	28-09-1978
		NL 7613660 A,B,	13-06-1977
		NO 764186 A	10-06-1977
		PT 65934 A,B	01-01-1977
		AT 367750 B	26-07-1982
		AT 205379 A	15-12-1981
		AT 356304 B	25-04-1980
		AT 905176 A	15-09-1979
		AU 515473 B	09-04-1981
		AU 2035076 A	15-06-1978
		AU 527063 B	17-02-1983
		AU 3757978 A	03-01-1980
		CS 228113 B	16-04-1984
		CS 228103 B	14-05-1984
		ES 454098 A	16-03-1978
		ES 466094 A	01-10-1978
		GB 1538207 A	10-01-1979
		GB 1538206 A	10-01-1979
		HU 175799 B	28-10-1980
		IL 78802 A	15-01-1992
		JP 52097934 A	17-08-1977
		NZ 182812 A	24-08-1984
		SE 438680 B	29-04-1985
		SE 7613799 A	10-06-1977
EP 0526348 A	03-02-1993	FR 2679903 A	05-02-1993
		AT 163289 T	15-03-1998
		AU 691223 B	14-05-1998
		AU 1154195 A	04-05-1995
		AU 658664 B	27-04-1995
		AU 2475892 A	02-03-1993
		BR 9205336 A	16-11-1993

Form PCT/ISA/210 (patent family annex) (July 1992)

# INTERNATIONAL SEARCH REPORT

Information on patent family members

International Application No

PCT/US 00/01603

Patent document cited in search report	Publication date	Patent family member(s)	Publication date
EP 0526348 A		CA 2093221 A, C	03-02-1993
		CA 2206776 A	03-02-1993
		CZ 9300682 A	19-01-1994
		DE 69224450 D	26-03-1998
		DE 69224450 T	30-07-1998
		ES 2117038 T	01-08-1998
		FI 931476 A	01-04-1993
		FI 980175 A	27-01-1998
		WO 9303013 A	18-02-1993
		HK 1008741 A	14-05-1999
		HU 68927 A	28-08-1995
		HU 9500474 A	30-10-1995
		IL 102703 A	18-03-1997
		IL 117592 A	11-04-1999
		JP 2633085 B	23-07-1997
		JP 6501960 T	03-03-1994
		LT 114 A, B	15-06-1994
		LV 10091 A, B	10-05-1994
		MX 9204487 A	01-02-1993
		NO 180047 B	28-10-1996
		NZ 243795 A	27-04-1995
		SG 47501 A	17-04-1998
		SK 42693 A	06-10-1993
		US 5397801 A	14-03-1995
		US 5481005 A	02-01-1996
		US 5578633 A	26-11-1996
		US 5338755 A	16-08-1994
		ZA 9205781 A	02-03-1993
WO 9216549 A	01-10-1992	AU 1354292 A	21-10-1992
WO 9601644 A	25-01-1996	US 6001809 A	14-12-1999
		AU 2964295 A	09-02-1996
		CA 2193508 A	25-01-1996
		EP 0769958 A	02-05-1997
		JP 10506608 T	30-06-1998
WO 9622966 A	01-08-1996	AU 718926 B	04-05-2000
		AU 4911596 A	14-08-1996
		BG 101841 A	30-04-1998
		BR 9606778 A	06-01-1998
		CA 2211181 A	01-08-1996
		CN 1177343 A	25-03-1998
		CZ 9702340 A	18-03-1998
		EP 0805796 A	12-11-1997
		FI 973087 A	22-09-1997
		HU 9702461 A	28-04-1998
		JP 10513160 T	15-12-1998
		NO 973384 A	19-09-1997
		PL 321848 A	22-12-1997
		SK 98797 A	04-02-1998
WO 9906431 A	11-02-1999	AU 8661198 A	22-02-1999
		EP 1001972 A	24-05-2000
		NO 20000450 A	28-03-2000

Form PCT/ISA/210 (patent family annex) (July 1992)